

HIDDEN TREASURE
OR
A GOLDEN GUIDE
TO
ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION

BY
A C. DE, B. A.,

*Experienced Head Master and Author of Progressive
Translation, Seven Hundred Unseen Passages,
Sanskrit Made Easy, etc*

NINTH EDITION



STUDENTS' LIBRARY
CALCUTTA & DACCA

1923

Rupee one & Annas eight only.

PUBLISHED BY
B M DUTT,
57-1, College Street, Calcutta

PRINTED BY
S K CHATTERJEE,
BANI PREES,
12 1, Cherebagan Lane, Calcutta

PREFACE TO THE EIGHTH EDITION

In placing the present edition in the hands of the students and teachers concerned I have only to say that the book has undergone a thorough revision and has been considerably enlarged. It may not be out of place, however, to point out that the principal object with which the book was written, namely, to help Matriculation candidates to prepare for their examination, and the plan followed in the previous edition, remain unaltered as sound. Any additions that have been made, have been made in conformity with that object and that plan. All available University questions have been inserted and full answers given. In a word, I have spared no pains to serve the interests of Matriculation students and I hope that to them this book will prove a valuable compendium.

Designed mainly as it is to be a guide and a coach to those who are striving merely to pass their examination, I feel sure that this book will, at the same time, impart to the general body of students such knowledge of grammar and composition as will enable them to write and speak English correctly. And as such I sincerely hope that the present edition will receive at the hands of teachers and students the patronage and reception which they so kindly accorded to all previous editions.

JAFARNAGAR, }
1922

A. C. De

CONTENTS

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
I	Spelling	I
II	Alphabet, Accent, etc	5
III	Nouns	9
IV	Gender	11
V	Number	15
VI	Case	31
VII	Diminutives	37
VIII	Pronouns	39
IX	Adjectives and Comparison of Adjectives	41
X	Articles	50
XI	Verbs	54
XII	Past Tense and Past Participle	65
XIII	Adverbs	72
XIV	Formation of Nouns, Verbs, etc	74
XV	Single words for two or more words	86
XVI	Compound words	90
XVII	Direct and Indirect speech	97
XVIII	Expressions liable to be confounded	105
XIX	Similar sentences distinguished	150
XX	Idiomatic uses of Verbs	165
XXI	Words followed by appropriate Prepositions	180
XXII	Various uses of Prepositions	216
XXIII	Different meanings	220
XXIV	Words used in more Parts of Speech than one	226

CONTENTS

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
XXV	✓ Examples of full Parsing	243
XXVI	✓ Idioms and Phrases	269
XXVII	Punctuation	298
XVIII	Combination and Transformation of Sentences	299
XXIX	✓ Analysis of Sentences ✓	308
XXX	{ Some Important Rules }	311
XXXI	{ Corrections }	327
XXXII	✓ Miscellaneous questions with hints	334

HIDDEN TREASURE

CHAPTER I

SPELLING

Students should mark carefully the spelling of the following words —

First Group

Accommodation, addition, admission, ascension, commemoration, commission, compassion, complexion, decision, division, edition, fashion, occasion, omission, passion, possession, remission, repetition, sedition, separation, session, suspicion

Second Group

Ancient, beneficent, deficient, efficient, magnificent, patient, proficient, quotient, sentient, sufficient, transient

Third Group.

Ambitious, avaricious, conscientious, conscious, covetous, delicious, ferocious, fictitious, infectious, judicious, malicious, nutritious, precious, righteous, seditious, superstitious, suspicious, vexatious, vicious

Fourth Group

Rule :—Words ending in— ll generally (but not always) drop one—I when they are combined without a hyphen.

Almighty, already, altogether, always, all-wise, all-powered, awful, befall, downfall, dullness or dulness, farewell, for

HIDDEN TREASURE

fulfil, full-blown, full-grown, good-will, illness, mournful, skilful,
until, unwell, welcome, well-fare, well being, wilful

Fifth Group

Abhorrence, admittance, assistance, audience, convenience,
 diligence, existence, experience, grievance, inheritance,
innocence, intelligence, obedience, occurrence, perseverance,
persistence, prevalence, reference, remittance, repentance,
residence, resistance vengeance

Sixth Group

Rule —c is followed by—ei, but other letters and the
 combination—ch are generally followed by ie

Ceiling, conceit, conceive, perceive, receipt, receive,
 achieve, believe, chief, fierce, mischief, mischievous, niece,
 pierce, piety, shield, siege, relieve, yield

Exceptions —Counterfeit, deity, either, foreign, forfeit,
 height, heinous, leisure, neighbour, seize, sovereign.

Seventh Group

Accident, antecedent, apparent, benevolent, buoyant,
 confident, correspondent, defendant, descendant, firmament,
 independent, opponent, permanent, precedent, president,
 recurrent, superintendent

Eighth Group

Artificial, beneficial, celestial, commercial, essential, finan-
 cial, influential, judicial, martial, nuptial, social, substantial

Ninth Group

Rule —Final—e is sometimes dropped and sometimes
 retained before suffixes

Awful but aweless, curable but careful, lovable but love-
 movable but movemen truly but trueness, valuable but

valueless, wholly but solely, acknowledgment—argument—
duly—judgment—practicable, but achievement—changeable—
eyeing—manageable—marriageable—peaceable—serviceable

Tenth Group

Accommodate, aerify, arithmetic, beggar, centre, commemorate, committee, corroborate, fiery, grammar, harass, liquefy, massacre, mathematics, necessary, persuade, privilege, pursuit, sceptre, summer, theatre, tyranny

Eleventh Group

Address, advantageous, author, bachelor, courageous, courteous, director, emperor, etiquette, fascinate, governor, holiday, inspector, liquor, middle, murderer, professor, religious, schedule, secretary, title, traveller, wooden, woollen,

Twelfth Group

Rule —When the accent is on the last syllable, the final consonant preceded by a single vowel is doubled before—ed and ing

Befitting, befitted, conferring, conferred, inferring, inferred, omitting, omitted, preferring, preferred, referring, referred, submitting, submitted, transferring, transferred

Thirteenth Group

Rule —The final consonant is not doubled before—ed and—ing when the accent is not on the last syllable.

Benefited, differed, limited, merited, offered, profited, visited

Exceptions —Biassed, travelled, worshipped

Fourteenth Group

Colonel, (kurnel), corps, develop, gaiety, grandeur, installation, instalment, jeweller, lieutenant, pigeon, paralleled, remedy, scissors, splendour, tranquillity, victuals, whether

HIDDEN TREASURE

QUESTIONS

1 Rewrite the following words correcting errors in spelling, if necessary —(C U 1904)

Intreevible, counsilor, dilibratély, unostintacious, dimanor, arethmitician, interstices, emoliant, loquacious, fascination, comemoration, ditereorate

Ans Irretrievable, councillor, (or counsellor according to sense), deliberately, unostentatious, demeanour, arithmetician, interstices, emollient, loquacious, fascination, commemoration, deteriorate

2 Rewrite the following words correcting errors in spelling —(C U 1906)

Beseige, sieze, elegiance, batalion, mathemetics, aniversary, embarassing, servicable, symetrical, jewelery

Ans Besiege, seize, allegiance, battalion, mathematics, anniversary, embarrassing, serviceable, symmetrical, jewellery

8 Write the following words inserting the omitted letters —(C U 1902)

Ach v ment (great deed), ber .v ment (friend's death), con v ble (thinkable), ga ty (mirth), ben f t d (helped), unpar l .l d (unequalled), gall p ng (running fast), worsh p ng (praying, etc), mis l n, us (of various kinds) vorac us (greedy), an vers ry (the same day of the year), maint n nce (means of support), sep r tion (disjoining), et m .l gy (derivation of words, etc), d ing (colouring), d ing (ceasing to exist), c l ng (roof)

Ans Achievement, bereavement, conceivable, gaiety, benefited, unparalleled, galloping, worshipping, miscellaneous voracious, anniversary, maintenance, separation, etymology, dyeing, dying, ceiling

4 Write the following words, inserting the omitted letters —(C U 1903)

Unbel v ng (incredulous), ex...l ration (high spirits),
 in fectu ly (vainly), sup rfl s (unnecessary), r nd vous
 (appointed meeting-place), r con tre (to survey in war), ir .
 s st ble (not to be withstood), c nt f t (sham), pr pr
 t r (owner), t m lt s (disorderly)

Ans Unbelieving, exhilaration, ineffectually, superfluous,
rendezvous, reconnoitre, irresistible, counterfeit, proprietor,
tumultuous

CHAPTER II

ALPHABET, ACCENT, ETC

1. Rules for the use of Capital letters

Capital letters should be used only in the following places —

- 1 The first letter of every sentence
- 2 The first letter of every line of poetry
- 3 The first letter of a quotation when it gives a complete sense, as, He said, "When did you go home?"
- 4 The first letter of the names of the Deity and the pronouns referring to him, as, God blesses His favourite sons
- 5 The first letter of proper nouns and adjectives derived from them, as, England, English, Indian
6. The first letter of personified objects, as, O Bird !
Oh Death !
- 7 The first letter of titles, as, His Majesty, Mr. Robert
- 8 The first letter of important words, as, the Reformation.

9 The pronoun **I** and the interjection **O**.

10 Single letters forming abbreviations , as, B A , L M S.

II W and Y

W and **Y** are consonants when they begin a word or a syllable , as in *week, year*. But they are vowels when they do not begin a word or a syllable , as in *two, try*

III Syllable.

A syllable is a letter or a combination of letters that can be pronounced with one effort of the voice , as, I, pre-sent

IV Accent and Emphasis

Accent is the stress laid upon a syllable in pronouncing a word , as, pre'-sent, car'-riage, pre-pare'.

Emphasis is the stress laid upon an entire word , as, I want the *money* and not the *book*

V Some words are **nouns** when the accent is on the first syllable and **verbs** when the accent is on the second syllable

Nouns

Ab'stract=summary

Att'ribute=a quality

Con'cert=a musical entertain-
ment

Con'duct=behaviour

Con'fine=border

Con'flict=struggle

Con'sort=a partner

Con'test=a dispute

Con'tract=an agreement

Con'trast=dissimilarity

Verbs

Abstra'ct=to draw away

Attribu'te=to ascribe

Concert'=to arrange

Conduct'=to guide, to manage

Confine'=to limit, to imprison

Conflict'=to oppose

Consort'=to associate with

Contest'=to dispute

Contract'=to draw together

Contrast'=to compare dissimi-
lar things

*Nouns**Verbs*

Con'vert = one who has changed his religion

Convert' = to change from one condition or religion to another

Con'vict = a man convicted

Convict' = to pronounce guilty

Des'ert = a barren place

Desert' = to forsake

De'tail = a particular account

Detail' = to relate minutely.

Di'gest = an analysis

Digest' = to dissolve food in the stomach

En'trance = the door

Entrance' = to fill with excessive delight

Es'say = a trial, a written composition

Essay' = to try

Ex'ile = one banished from one's country

Exil'e = to banish from one's country

Ex'tract = a passage taken from a book, essence

Extract' = to draw out by force, to distil

Im'port = meaning, that which is brought from abroad.

Import' = to signify, to bring from abroad

In'cense = a perfume,

✓ Incens'e = to provoke

O'b'ject = a thing, motive.

Object' = to oppose

Pe'r'fume = sweet smelling scent

Perfum'e = to scent

Pe'r'mit = a pass

Permit' = to allow

Pre'sent = a gift

Present' = to make a gift of

Pro'duce = product.

Produce' = to bring forward to cause

Pro'ject = a plan

Project' = to contrive, to jut out

Re'bel = one who rebels.

Rebel' = to oppose any lawful authority

Re'cord = a register

Record' = to write anything formally

*Nouns**Verbs*

Re'fuse = worthless remains

Refuse' = to reject

Sub'ject = one under the power of another , topic.

Subject' = to bring under

Su'rvey = view , the measuring of land

Surve'y = to look over , to inspect

Su'spect = one who is suspected

Suspect' = to imagine to be guilty

Tran'sport = ecstasy

Transport' = to carry from one place to another

VI Some words are **adjectives** when the accent is on the first syllable and **verbs** when the accent is on the second syllable

*Adjectives**Verbs*

Ab'sent = not present

Absent' = to keep away

Co'nverse = opposite.

Converse' = to talk with

Fre'quent = coming or occurring often

Frequent' = to visit often

Pre'sent = not absent , not past or future

Present' = to make a gift of

Sub'ject = hable

Subject' = to bring under.

VII Some words are **nouns** when the accent is on the first syllable and **adjectives** when the accent is on the second syllable.

*Nouns**Adjectives*

Au'gust = the eighth month of the year

August' = majestic

Com'pact = agreement

Compact' = firm , close

Ex'pert = one who is skilled in any art or science

Expert' = skilful.

In'stinct=impulse	Instinct'=moved , animated
In'vālid=a sick man	Invalid'=not sound
Min'ute=the sixtieth part of an hour.	Minu'te=very small
Pr'ecedent=a previous instance	Prece'dent=going before

CHAPTER III

NOUNS

I Classification of nouns.

There are five classes of nouns —

- | | | |
|--------------|---|--|
| (A) Concrete | { | Proper
Common
Collective
Material |
| (B) Abstract | | |

There is another kind of nouns called *Singular* nouns , as, sun, earth, moon, nature, providence

✓ II Concrete and Abstract nouns *Ques*

A concrete noun is the name of an object which can be seen, touched, heard, smelt, or tasted , as, book, man, water, air

An Abstract noun is the name of a quality, action or state belonging to an object as, hardness, whiteness, modesty

✓ III A Collective noun and a noun of Multitude *Ques*

A collective noun is the name of a group of persons or things considered as one , as, class, party, fleet A collective noun in the nominative case is followed by a verb in the singular number ; as, The *army* was defeated

✓ A noun of multitude is the name of a group of persons or things when the persons or things composing the group are thought of separately. A noun of multitude in the nominative case is followed by a verb in the plural number, as, The *army* (the soldiers composing the army) were flying

IV Proper nouns and Singular nouns

Proper nouns are the names of particular persons or things. They are used as meaningless marks to distinguish a person or thing from other persons or things. Thus the name *Padma lochana* (পদ্মলোচন—lotus-eyed) may be borne by a blind man and the name *Dhanapati* (ধনপতি—master of wealth) may be borne by a beggar

Singular nouns are also the names of particular objects. But they are not meaningless. Thus, sun, moon, nature, &c denote not only particular objects but also the attributes possessed by those objects

V Proper nouns become Common —

(1) When they are applied to several persons bearing the same name or title, as, There are three *Harens* in this class. The *Sultans* of Turkey

(2) When similarity of character is meant, as, He is the *Homer* (poet like Homer) of Bengal. Kalidas is the *Shakespeare* of India

(3) When a person is little known or thought of, as, A Mr *Robert* came to you

✓ VI Collective nouns become Common, when they denote more groups than one, as, there are eight *classes* (groups of students) in this school

✓ VII Material nouns become Common —

(1) When they indicate things instead of the materials of which they are made, as, irons = things made of iron

(2) When they indicate different kinds of matter , as,
rices=different kinds of rice

(3) When they indicate detached portions of matter , as,
The boys pelted frogs with *stones*

✓ VIII Abstract nouns become Common —

(1) When they, instead of denoting qualities, denote persons or things possessing those qualities , as, There are fifteen *justices* (men who administer justice) in the High Court
There are seven *wonders* (wonderful objects) in the world
He has no respect for *age* (aged persons)

(2) When they denote kinds or particular instances of the same quality, state, or action , as, There are seven *colours* in the rainbow. There are fifteen *deaths* from cholera

CHAPTER IV

✓ GENDER

I Masculine nouns used as nouns of **Common** gender —

Author, colt, dog, horse, man, painter, poet, post-master

II Feminine nouns used as nouns of **Common** gender —

Bee, cow, duck, goose.

III Some Feminine nouns have no corresponding **Masculine** forms —

Amazon (a woman of masculine manners) , blonde (a girl of fair complexion) , brunette (a girl of dark complexion) coquette (a woman who seeks admiration from mere vanity) dowager (a widow with a dower) , shrew (a troublesome woman) , siren (a fascinating but wicked woman).

IV Some masculines are derived from the **feminine** .—

Bridegroom, drake, gander, merman, widower, wizard

V Some words are with double feminine suffix —
seamstress, songstress, spinstress

VI There are three ways of distinguishing the gender —

(1) By a change of word —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Bachelor	{ maid or spinster	✓ Husband	wife
Beau	belle	✓ King	queen
Boar	sow	✓ Lord	lady
Boy	girl	✓ Male	female
Bridegroom	bride	✓ Master	mistress
Brother	sister	✓ Milter	spawner
Buck	doe	✓ Mr	Mrs
Bull	cow	✓ Monk	nun
Bullock	heifer	✓ Nephew	niece
Cock	hen	✓ Ox	cow
Colt	filly	✓ Papa	mamma
Dog	bitch	✓ Ram	ewe
Drake	duck	✓ Sir, Sire	madam
Drone	bee	✓ Sire (a beast)	dam
Earl	countess	✓ Sloven	slut
Father	mother	✓ Son	daughter
Fiar	sister	✓ Stag	hind
Gaffer	gammer	✓ Stallion	mare
Gander	goose	✓ Steer	heifer
Gentleman	{ lady or gentlewoman	✓ Swain	nymph
Hart	roe	✓ Tailor	seamstress
Horse	mare	✓ Uncle	aunt
		✓ Wether	ewe
		✓ Wizard	witch

(2) By adding a word —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Billy-goat	nanny-goat	✓ Jack-ass	jenny ass
Boar-pig	sow pig	✓ Land-lord	land-lady
Buck rabbit	doe rabbit	Man servant	maid-servant
Bull calf	cow-calf	Milk-man	milk-maid
Fisher man	{ fisher-woman, fish-wife	Mer man	mer-maid
He goat	she-goat	✓ School-master	school-mistress

, (3) By difference in the termination. —

First Group

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Administrator	administratrix	✓ Prosecutor	prosecutrix
Executor	executrix	Testator	testatrix

Second Group

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Actor	actress	✓ Instructor	instructress
Benefactor	benefactress	✓ Porter	portress
Director	directress	✓ Traitor	traitress
Editor	editress	Victor	victress

Third Group

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
✓ Abbot	abbess	✓ Poet	poetess
Author	authoress	✓ Priest	priestess
Count	countess	Prince	princess
Duke	duchess	* Shepherd	shepherdess
Heir	heirress	Sorcerer	sorceress
Marquis	marchioness	✓ Tiger	tigress
Negro	negress	✓ Viscount	viscountess
		<i>Votary</i>	<i>Votress</i>

Fourth Group

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Alexander	Alexandrina	John	Jane
Charles	Caroline	Joseph	Josephine
Don	donna	Lad	lass
Fox	vixen	Master Smith	Miss Smith
Hero	heroine	Paul	Pauline
Henry	Henrietta	Sultan	Sultana
Infant	infanta		

VII Common, Masculine and Feminine —

<i>Common</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Baby	male baby	female baby
Calf	bullock	heifer
Child	boy or son	girl or daughter
Cousin	male cousin	female cousin
Deer	hart	roe
Foal	colt	filly
Fowl	cock	hen
Horse	stallion	mare
Monarch	king	queen
Person	man	woman
Pig	boar	sow
Sheep	ram	ewe
Sovereign	king	queen
Spouse	husband	wife

CHAPTER V

NUMBER

I Rules for forming the plural

(1) Plurals are generally formed by adding *s* to the singulars :—

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Eye	eyes	Monarch	monarchs
Gander	ganders	Prince	princes
House	houses	Sow	sows

(2) Plurals are formed by adding *es* to the singulars ending in *s*, *ss*, *x*, *sh*, *z* or *ch* (soft) —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Brush	brushes	Gas	gases
Church	churches	Princess	princesses
Fox	foxes	Topaz	topazes

(3) Final—*y* preceded by a consonant or *u* is changed into *ies* in the plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Colloquy	colloquies	Sky	skies
Fly	flies	Soliloquy	soliloquies
Lady	ladies	Story	stories

(4) Final—*y* preceded by a vowel is not changed into *ies* in the plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Fray	frays	Monkey	monkeys
Key	keys	Valley	valleys

(5) Nouns ending in **O** preceded by a consonant form the plural by adding **es** —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Buffalo	buffaloes	Motto	mottoes
Cargo	cargoes	Negro	negroes
Echo	echoes	Potato	potatoes
Hero	heroes	Tornado	tornadoes
Mango	mangoes	Volcano	volcanoes

(6) Some nouns ending in **O** preceded by a consonant form the plural by adding **s** only —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Canto	cantos	Piano	pianos
Grotto	grottos	Proviso	provisos
Halo	halos	Quarto	quartos
Memento	mementos	Solo	solos
Octavo	octavos	Tiro	tiros

(7) Some nouns ending in **O** form the plural by adding both **s** and **es** —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Calico	calicos or calicoes
Mosquito	mosquitos or mosquito ^s
Portico	porticos or porticoes

(8) Nouns ending in **eo**, **io**, **yo**, or **oo** form the plural by adding **s** —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Cameo	cameos	Folio	folios
Cuckoo	cuckoos	Hindoo	hindoo ^s
Embryo	embryos	Seraglio	seraglios

(9) Some nouns form the plural by adding *en* or *ne* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Brother	{ brethren or brothers	Cow	{ cows or kine
Child	children	Ox	oxen

(10) Final *f* or *fe* is sometimes changed into *ves* in the plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Calf	calves	✓ Scarf	{ scarfs or scarves
Dwarf	{ dwarfs or dwarves	✓ Sheaf	sheaves
Knife	knives	✓ Thiel	thieves
Leaf	leaves	✓ Turf	{ turfs or turves
Life	lives		{ wharfs or wharves
Loaf	loaves	✓ Wharf	
Myself	ourselves		

(11) Final *f* or *fe* is sometimes not changed into *ves* in the plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Chief	chiefs	✓ Proof	proofs
Cliff	cliffs	✓ Reef	reefs
Fife	fifes	✓ Roof	roofs
Grief	griefs	✓ Safe	safes
Hoof	hoofs	✓ Strife	strifes

(12) Some nouns form the plural by a change of the inside vowel —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Foot	feet	✓ Mouse	mice
Goose	geese	✓ Tooth	teeth
Louse	lice	✓ Woman	women

(13) ^r Nouns ending in **Man** change **Man** into **Men** in the plural when **Man** is used in the sense of *human being* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Alderman	Aldermen	Fisherman	Fishermen
Chinaman	Chinamen	Footman	Footmen
Clergyman	Clergymen	Frenchman	Frenchmen
Coachman	Coachmen	Gentleman	Gentlemen
Dutchman	Dutchmen	Statesman	Statesmen
Englishman	Englishmen	Yeoman	Yeomen

(14) Nouns ending in **Man** form the plural by adding **s**, when **Man** is not used in the sense of *human being* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Brahman	Brahmans	Norman	Normans
German	Germans	Ottoman	Ottomans
Longman	Longmans	Talisman	Talismans
Mussalman	Mussalmans	Turkman	Turkmans

(15) Compounds where both the component words are inflected in the plural form —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Knight-templar	Knights templars
Lord-justice	Lords justices
Lord lieutenant	Lords-lieutenants
Man servant	Men servants or man-servants
Woman servant	Women servants or woman servants

(16) Compounds of which only the first word is pluralised —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Coat-of-mail	coats-of-mail
Commander in chief	commanders-in-chief
Court-martial	{ courts-martial or court-martials
Father-in-law	fathers-in-law
Knight-errant	{ knights-errant or knight-errants
Lady in-waiting	ladies-in-waiting
Looker on	lookers on
Man of-war	men-of-war
Passer-by	passers by
Sister-in-law	sisters-in-law
Son-in-law	sons-in-law
State-general	states general

(17) Compounds of which only the last word is pluralised —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Camp-follower	camp followers
Foot man	foot-men
For-get-me not	for-get-me-nots
Governor-general	governor-generals
Handful	handfuls
Lieutenant-governor	lieutenant-governors
Maid servant	maid-servants
Major-general	major generals
Man-trap	man-traps
Poet laureate	poet-laureates
Spoonful	spoonfuls
Step-son	step-sons
Ty o-per cent	two per cents

II Foreign Plurals —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Agendum	agenda	Genus	genera
Analysis	analyses	Hypothesis	hypotheses
Appendix	appendices	Index	indices
Apparatus	apparatus	Madam	{ madams or mesdames
Axis	axes	Medium	media
Bandit	{ banditti or bandits	Memorandum	memoranda
Basis	bases	Monsieur	messieurs
Beau	{ Beau or beaus	Oasis	oases
		Phenomenon	Phenomena
		Radius	radii
Cherub	{ cherubs or cherubim	Seraph	{ seraphs or seraphim
Crisis	crises	Series	series
Datum	data	Species	species
Erratum	errata	Terminus	{ termini or terminuses
Focus	{ foci or focuses	Vertex	vertices
Formula	{ formulæ or formulas	Virtuoso	virtuosi

III Nouns which are Singular in form, but plural in use —

'Cattle,' clergy, 'foot (foot-soldiers), gentry,' horse (horse-soldiers), mankind, 'people (in the sense of men), police, public, swine, vermin—are plural in use

IV Nouns which are **Plural** in form, but **Singular** in use —

✓ News, means, galloys, summons, mathematics, innings, smallpox—are singular in use

✓ V Nouns which are **alike** in both numbers —

Deer, sheep, cannon, piec, salmon, dozen, yoke, series, species, apparatus, corps—are alike in both numbers

✓ VI Nouns which have **no plural form** —

Scenery, poetry, issue (children), offspring (children), furniture, abuse (reproach), hair—have generally no plural form

VII Nouns which have **no singular form** —

✓ Antipodes, thanks, tidings, bowels, wages, bellows, billiards, victuals, aborigines, aims, ashes, eaves, entrails, environs, remains, scissors, tong, premises (buildings), spectacles (eye glasses), arms (weapons)

VIII Some nouns have **one meaning** in the singular, but **two meanings** in the plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Appointment = situation	Appointments = { 1 Situations 2 Equipments
Arm = part of the body	Arms = { 1 Parts of the body 2 Weapons
Circumstance = event	Circumstances = { 1. events 2 condition
Colour = hue	Colours = { 1 hues 2 flag of regiment
Custom = habit	Customs = { 1 habits 2 revenue duties
Effect = result	Effects = { 1. results 2 property

*Singular**Plural*

Element = simple substance	Elements = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{simple substances} \\ 2 & \text{rudiments} \end{cases}$
Manner = method	Manners = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{methods} \\ 2 & \text{behaviour} \end{cases}$
Minute = the sixtieth part of an hour	Minutes = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{the sixtieth parts of an hour} \\ 2 & \text{the proceedings of a meeting} \end{cases}$
Moral = a moral lesson	Morals = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{moral lessons} \\ 2 & \text{conduct} \end{cases}$
Number = quantity . .	Numbers = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{quantities} \\ 2 & \text{poetry} \end{cases}$
Pain = suffering	Pains = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{sufferings} \\ 2 & \text{trouble} \end{cases}$
Part = portion	Parts = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{portions} \\ 2 & \text{abilities} \end{cases}$
Premise = proposition	Premises = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{propositions} \\ 2 & \text{buildings} \end{cases}$
Provision = condition	Provisions = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{conditions} \\ 2 & \text{food} \end{cases}$
Quarter = fourth part	Quarters = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{fourth parts} \\ 2 & \text{lodgings} \end{cases}$
Sessions = the sitting of a court or public body	Sessions = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{sittings of a court or public body} \\ 2 & \text{sessions court} \end{cases}$
Spectacle = sight	Spectacles = $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{sights} \\ 2 & \text{eye-glasses} \end{cases}$

IX Some nouns have **two meanings** in the singular, but **one meaning** in the plural —

*Singular**Plural*

Abuse $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{wrong use} \\ 2 & \text{reproach} \end{cases}$	Abuses = wrong uses
---	---------------------

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Foot = { 1 part of the body 2 infantry	Feet = parts of the body
Horse = { 1 a kind of animal 2 cavalry	Horses = a kind of animal
Issue = { 1 result 2. offspring	Issues = results
Light = { 1 a lamp 2 the light of a lamp	Lights = lamps
People = { 1 nation 2 persons	Peoples = nations
Powder = { 1 a dose 2 gun-powder	Powders = doses
Practice = { 1 habit 2 exercise of a profession	Practices = habits
Wood = { 1 forest 2 timber	Woods = forests

X Some nouns have different meanings in different numbers .—

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Advice = counsel	Advices = information
Air = atmosphere	Airs = affectation
Beef = the flesh of an ox or cow	Beeves = oxen, cattle
Belonging = the act	Belongings = possessions
Compass = circuit	Compasses = an instrument
Content = satisfaction	Contents = things contained
Copper = a metal	Coppers = copper coins
Corn = grain	Corns = hard growth on the foot
Cutting = the act	Cuttings = parts cut off
Earning = the act	Earnings = money saved
Force = strength	Forces = army
Good = benefit	Goods = property

*Singular**Plural*

Hanging = the act	Hangings = things hung
Iron = a metal	Irons = fetters made of iron
Physic = medicine	Physics = natural science
Return = coming back	Returns = statistics
Salt = a substance used for seasoning	Salts = substances used for medicine
Sand = a kind of matter	Sands = sandy tracts of land
Scale = anything graduated	Scales = balance
Sweeping = the act	Sweepings = refuse
Vapour = steam	Vapours = ill humour
Vesper = evening	Vespers = evening service

IX Some nouns have two plural forms with separate meanings —

*Singular**Plural*

Beef	{ 1 Beefs = kinds of beef 2 Beeves = oxen
Brother	{ 1 Brothers = sons of the same parents 2 Brethren = members of the same community
Cloth	{ 1 Cloths = kinds of cloth or pieces of cloth 2 Clothes = garments
Cow	{ 1 Cows = individual cows 2 Kine = cattle
Die	{ 1 Dies = stamps for coining 2 Dice = small cubes for gaming
Fish =	{ 1 Fish — denotes species 2 Fishes — denotes number and kinds
Fowl	{ 1 Fowl — used collectively 2 Fowls — used separately
Genius	{ 1 Geniuses = men of talents 2 Genii = spirits

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
Index	{ ₁	Indexes = tables of contents
	{ ₂	Indices = signs in algebra
Pea	{ ₁	Peas = Separate seeds
	{ ₂	Pease = when the species is meant
Penny	{ ₁	Pennies = separate coins
	{ ₁	Pence = a collective sum
Sail	{ ₁	Sail = ships
	{ ₂	Sails = canvases
Shot	{ ₁	Shot = balls discharged from a gun
/	{ ₂	Shots = discharges
Staff	{ ₁	Staves = sticks
	{ ₂	Staffs = departments in the army

QUESTIONS

1 Give two plurals of each of the following —

Die, index, cloth Indicate the meanings of these plurals
(C U 1900.)

2 Give the plurals of —(C U 1902.)

Mussalman, fisherman, hoof, sheaf, sister-in-law, major-general, lady-in-waiting, camp-follower

3 Indicate the numbers of—alms, news, annals, forceps pincers, gallows, spawn, kine . (C U 1902)

Ans Annals—This is always used in the plural number

Forceps—This is always used in the plural number

Pincers—This is always used in the plural number

Spawn—This word has the same form in both numbers

Kine—This is one of the plural forms of "cow"

4 How would you describe the numbers of—agenda, formula, amends, means, summons, pence, dice, species, series?
(C U 1903.)

Ans Agenda—This is the plural form of "agendum"

Formula—This is singular, the plural forms of the word are "formulas" and "formulæ"

Pence—This is one of the plural forms of “penny”

Dice—This is one of the plural forms of “die”

5 Give the plurals of—Spoonful, Lord-Lieutenant, Miss Pelham, potato, seraph, beau, focus, rhinoceros. (C U 1905)

Ans —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Spoonful	spoonfuls
Lord-lieutenant	Lords-lieutenants
Miss Pelham	the Miss Pelhams or the Misses Pelham
Rhinoceros	rhinoceroses

6 Mention two words which are used only in the plural, two which have no plural, and two which when used in the plural have a sense different from the singular (C U 1906)

Ans *Thanks* and *ashes* are used only in the plural

Scenery and *poetry* have no plural

Advice and *force* when used in the plural have a sense different from the singular

Advice = counsel

Advices = information

Force = strength

Forces = troops

7 Explain and illustrate by short sentences the difference in meaning between the two plurals of each of the following words —brother, cloth, die, penny (C, U 1907)

Ans Brother—The two plural forms are *brothers* (sons of the same parents) and *brethren* (members of the same community)

Brothers—Ram had four *brothers* and three sisters

Brethren—I am proud of the confidence which my *brethren* of the Bar repose in me

Cloth—The plural forms are *cloths* (kinds of cloth or pieces of cloth) and *clothes* (garments)

Cloths—The merchant gave *cloths* to the poor.

Clothes—A gentleman should never go out in dirty *clothes*.

Die—The two plural forms are *dies* (stamps for coining) and *dice* (small cubes for gaming)

Dies—*Dies* are imported to India from England and Germany

Dice—He dances for joy when he makes a good throw at *dice*

Penny—The two plural forms are *pennies* (separate coins) and *pence* (a collective sum).

Pennies—The widow had only four *pennies* with her

Pence—I paid a *six-pence* for the book

8 Give two meanings of each of the following, and construct short illustrative sentences —pains, customs, effects, colours (C U 1907.)

Ans.—

Pains=suffering, as, The *pains* of death can be suffered but once

Pains=trouble, as, I shall spare no *pains* to secure money for you

Customs=habits, as, The social *customs* of a people are a fair index of its character

Customs=revenue duties, as, This is the place where *customs* on exports and imports are collected

Effects=results, as, Disease, poverty and premature death are the after *effects* of sin

Effects=property, as, All his *effects* have been sold in order to clear off his debts

Colours=hues, as, There are seven *colours* in the rainbow

Colours=flag, as, The Black Watch (name of a regiment) received their *colours* from the Viceroy

9 Give two examples of each of the following —

- (a) Nouns which have *two plurals* with *separate meanings*.
 (b) *Plural forms* of nouns which differ in *meaning* from the *singulars*
 (c) *Plural forms* of nouns *construed* as *singular*
 (d) *Singular forms* of nouns treated as *plural* (C U 1909)

Ans —(c) *News* and *summons* are treated as singulars.

(d) *People* (in the sense of men) and *cattle* are treated as plurals

10 Distinguish between the two plurals of—cloth, genius, brother

Or

Tell the number of the following—alms, scissors, news, amends, summons, riches (C U 1912)

11 In what *sense* are the following words used when they do not admit of a *plural* —Foot, horse, powder

Ans—Foot = infantry

Horse = Cavalry

Powder = gun-powder,

12 Give the plurals of B A, Z, herself, Mr, Mrs, Miss Brown, Mr Smith, prince, princess, folk

Ans —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
B A	B A's	Miss Brown	{ the Miss Browns, or the Misses Brown
Z	Z's		
Herself	themselves	Mr Smith	{ the Mr Smiths* or the Messrs Smith

* This form 'Mr Smiths' is generally used half contemptuously, as thus — "I do not know how many 'Mr Smiths' there may be in this village," or "All the 'Mr Smiths' will be up in arms against me"

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Mr	Messrs	Prince	Princes
Mrs	Mesdames	Princess	Princesses
Folk	Folk or folks		

✓ 13. Give the different meanings of the singular and plural forms of—youth, ground and letter

Ans —

Youth = (1) state of being young , (2) a young person ,
(3) young persons collectively

Youths = young persons

Ground = (1) earth , (2) reason , (3) field

Grounds = (1) garden (2) reasons (3) fields , (4) dregs

Letter = (1) of alphabet , (2) epistle.

Letters = (1) of alphabet , (2) epistles , (3) literature

14 (a) What is a "True Singular" ? Give some examples

(b) What is a "True Plural" ? Give some examples

Ans — (a) We get a true singular when the final "s" is a part of the original singular noun and not a sign of the plural

Alms, riches, summons, eaves, kickshaws are true singulars
Of these, *alms*, *riches*, *caves*, and *kickshaws* are now used as plurals

(b) We get a true plural where the final "s" is not a part of the original singular noun, but is really a sign of the plural

Amends, news, means, bellows, measles, scissors, innings, gallows, etc, are true plurals. Of these, *news*, *measles*, *means*, *innings*, *gallows* are almost always used as singulars

15 Indicate the numbers of the following and construct short illustrative sentences —

Ans —

Alms (1902, 1912)—This is a true singular, but is now always used as a plural, as, In India it is a sacred duty to give *alms* to the poor

Amends (1903, 1912)—This is a true plural but is now used indifferently both in a singular and a plural sense, as, "She made me divine *amends* for a courtesy not acknowledged"

Eaves—This is a true singular, but is now always used as a plural as, Only the *eaves* of the house were left unfinished

Gallows (1902)—This is a true plural, but is now generally used as a singular, as, The *gallows* was set up just in front of the jail

Innings—This is a true plural, but is now used as a singular, as, Our party has not yet had an *innings*

Means (1903)—This is a true plural, but is now almost always used as a singular as, Money is nothing but a *means* to an end

Measles—This is a true plural, but is now used as a singular, as, *Measles* is a kind of eruptive fever

News (1912, 1902)—This is a true plural, but is now almost always used as a singular, as, Ill *news* runs apace

Odds—This is a true plural, but is now used sometimes as a singular and sometimes as a plural, as, The *odds* are heavily against there being a good harvest I am willing to give you any *odds* that England will win this war

Riches (1912)—This is a true singular, but is now used as a plural, as, Great *riches* are a great curse

Series (1903)—This is used in both numbers, as, He delivered a *series* of lectures in the Town Hall There are five mathematical *series*

Small-pox—This is a true plural, but is now used as a singular, as, *Small-pox* is contagious

Species (1903)—This is used in both numbers, as, Want of punctuality is a *species* of falsehood. There are many *species* of cats.

Summons (1903)—This is a true singular, the plural form of which is “summonses”, as, *Summons* was served upon him yesterday

16 Distinguish between the two plurals of —index, fish, brother (C U 1917.)

17. Give the plural of any *four* of the following words — crisis, fowl, cherub, Miss Brown, man-trap, father-in law (C U 1919.)

CHAPTER VI

CASE

I The Nominative Case

I. FORMS OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE

The principal forms of the nominative are—

- 1 Noun *Ram* did not go there
- 2 Pronoun *He* is absent to day.
- 3 Infinitive *To forgive* is divine
- 4 Gerund *Walking* is a good exercise.
- 5 Phrase *To rise early in the morning* is a good practice.
- 6 Clause *Where he was born* is unknown

II POSITION OF THE NOMINATIVE.

The nominative is put, as a rule, before the verb But it

is placed after the verb (or, after the auxiliary if there be any) in the following cases —

- 1 In interrogative sentences , as, Do *you* write a letter ?
- 2 With the imperative mood , as, Come (you) here Go there
- 3 In the subjunctive mood without *if* , as, Were *he* here, he would never say so
- 4 When the subjunctive mood is used to express a *wish* , as, May *you* live long ! Long live the *Queen* !
- 5 Sometimes in exclamation , as, How happily did *we* pass our time in the forest !
- 6 When *neither* or *nor* signifying *and not* precedes the verb , as, I shall not go, *neither* will *he* He has not done this, *nor* have *you*
- 7 In introducing speech reported directly, as, "I can finish this alone," said *he*
- 8 When a sentence begins with *here*, *there*, etc , as, There is a *lion* in the path
- 9 When the sentence is emphatic , as, Down went the *train* with her passengers
- 10 In poetry , as, "All bloodless lay the untrodden *snow* "
- 11 Very often after the adverbs *so*, *the more*, *the less*, etc in the second clause of a sentence , as, As you sow, *so* will *you* reap The more you read *the more* will *you* learn

III NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE

A noun or pronoun is said to be in the nominative absolute, when coming before a participle it is not grammatically related to the rest of the sentence , as, "The *sun* having set, the cattle went home " My *uncle* dying, the charge of the family devolved on me Here "sun" and "uncle" are to be parsed as *nominative absolute*

II The Objective Case

I FORMS OF THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

- 1 Noun I punished *Ram*
- 2 Pronoun Ram punished *me*
- 3 Infinitive . I want *to go*
- 4 Gerund I love *singing*
- 5 Phrase He does not know *how to behave with a gentleman*

- 6 Clause I do not remember *when he paid the money*

II. DIFFERENT KINDS OF OBJECT

1 Direct object.

Some transitive verbs have two objects. One of these objects is directly affected by the verb and is called the direct object. The Direct object is usually the name of a thing, as, Give him a *piece*. I sold him a *book*.

2 Indirect object

Some transitive verbs have two objects. One of these is indirectly affected by the verb and is called the Indirect object. The Indirect object usually stands for a person or an animal; as, Give *me* some books. I shall teach *Ram* a lesson. Give your *dog* a bad name.

3 Cognate object.

Some intransitive verbs take occasionally after them a noun of kindred meaning for their object, such objects are called Cognate objects, as, They fought a good *fight*. He runs a *race*. The queen dreamt an evil *dream*.

4 Facitive object.

Some transitive verbs take occasionally two objects, one representing a *person* and the other an *office*. The object

representing *office* is called the **Factitive** object, as, They made him *commander* The people elected him *President*

5 **Retained object**

One of the two objects taken by certain transitive verbs is retained as the object in the passive voice This object is called the **Retained** object, as, He was taught *grammar* by me Grammar was taught *him* by me

6 **Adverbial object**

Some nouns in the objective case are used adverbially to denote *time, space, value, amount* or *degree* They are called **Adverbial** objects as, I have been in this school *three years* My house is *three miles* from Sitakunda The table cost me *ten rupees* The wall is *fifteen feet* high He does not care a *fig* for you

III The Possessive case

RULES FOR FORMING THE POSSESSIVE CASE —

1 The **Possessive** is generally formed by adding an *apostrophe* and *s* to the noun as, boy *boy's*, girl *girl's*, children *children's*

2 When the plural ends in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding the *apostrophe* only, as, *horses' tails* *boys' books*

3 When the singular ends in *s* or *ce* and is followed by *sake*, the possessive is formed by adding the *apostrophe* only, as, *goodness' sake*, *conscience' sake* *righteousness sake*

4 Proper names ending in *s* take the *apostrophe* and *s*, as, *Venus's beauty* *Clambers's dictionary*, *Douglas's castle*, *James's house* *Columbus's discovery* *Smiles's essays*

Exceptions — *Moses' laws*, *Socrates' reasoning*

5 The possessive of compound nouns is formed by adding the *apostrophe* and *s* to the last word, if the last word

does not end in *s* ; as, Government of-India's office , William the Conqueror's reign , father-in-law's house. But Ghose and sons' shop

6 When there are two or more separate nouns connected by *and*, ('s) is added to the last word when *joint possession* is meant But when *separate* possession is meant, ('s) is added to each noun ; as—

John and Robert's firm=a firm belonging to both John and Robert

John's and Robert's firm=two firms, one belonging to John and the other belonging to Robert

QUESTIONS

1 Give the *possessive* case of —Prince of Wales, brothers, brethren, empress

(C. U 1886)

Ans Prince of Wales's, brothers', brethren's, empress's

2 Change into correct *Possessive* forms, without altering the *sense*, the expressions in *italics* —

(a) The house *belonging to K D Pal and R. C Biswas* is to let. (b) The door *leading out of the verandah* is open. (c) I asked *leave for six months* (d) I heard that speech *you made* about me.

(C U 1875.)

Ans—(a) K D. Pal and R C Biswas's house is to let (b) The door of the verandah is open (c) I asked for six months' leave (d) I heard your speech about me.

3. Change into correct *possessive forms*, without altering the sense, the expressions in *italics*—(a) This horse *belongs to some one else* (b) The home *belonging to Charles Dickens* is burnt (c) He applied for *furlough for six months* (d) He paid the money *for the sake of conscience*.

Ans —(a) This is some one else's horse (b) Charles Dickens's home is burnt (c) He applied for six months' furlough (d) He paid the money for conscience' sake

4 Explain the *import* of the possessive in the following —

(1) I believe you have a book of mine (2) He has a garden of his own (3) My friend has a picture of Poussin (4) My friend has a picture of Poussin's (5) This news of Ram must be true (6) This news of Ram's must be true

(C U 1901)

Ans —(1) I believe you have one out of several books in my possession Here "of" is used to signify "one out of several"

(2) He has a garden in his possession Here "of" is used for the sake of emphasis

(3) My friend has a likeness of Poussin

(4) My friend has one of the pictures of which Poussin is the owner

(5) This news about Ram must be true

(6) This news that Ram has brought must be true

5 Explain the *meaning* of the following —

(1) The continent of Asia (2) That face of my father's (3) What do you think of my horse running to-day? (C U 1906) (4) What do you think of my horse's running to day? (C U 1906) (5) Robert's and John's firm (6) Robert and John's firm (7) This is a portrait of my friend (8) This is a portrait of my friend's (C U 1906)

Ans —(1) The continent named Asia — Here "of" denotes apposition (2) That face, namely my father's face Here "of" denotes apposition (3) What is your opinion about my horse that is going to run to-day? (4) My horse did run to

day, do you think that he ran well? (5) Robert's firm and John's firm Here two separate firms are meant. (6) A firm belonging to both Robert and John. Here joint possession is meant (7) This is a likeness of my friend (8) This is one of the pictures of which my friend is the owner

CHAPTER VII

DIMINUTIVES

I The use of Diminutives —Diminutives are used to express the idea of *smallness, affection or contempt*

II Formation of Diminutives —

<i>Words</i>	<i>Diminutives</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Diminutives</i>
Animal	animalcule	Cigar	cigarette
Ankle	anklet	Circle	circlet
Arm	armlet-	City	citadel
Babe	baby	<u>Cock</u>	chicken
Ball	bullet	<u>Corn</u>	kernel
Baron	baronet	Crown	coronet
Bay	bight	Cut	cutlet
<u>Bird</u>	birdie	Dame	damsel
Book	booklet	Dear	darling
Brook	brooklet	<u>Duck</u>	duckling
Bull	bullock	<u>Eagle</u>	eaglet
Cabin	cabinet	<u>Eye</u>	eyelet
Car	chariot	Fat	fatling
Cat	kitten	Flower	floweret
<u>Change</u>	changeling	Fourth	farthing

<i>Words</i>	<i>Diminutives</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Diminutives</i>
Globe	globule	Pill	pilule
Goose	gosling	Pipe	pipkin
Hill	hillock	Poet	poetaster
Home	hamlet	Puss	pussy
Hump	hummock	Ring	ringlet
Ice	icicle	River	rivulet
Isle	islet	Root	rootlet
Lamb	lambkin	Rose	rosette
Lance	lancet	Sack	satchel
Lass	lassie	Seed	seedling
Leaf	leaflet	Shade	shadow
Lock	locket	Sign	signet
Lord	lordling	Spade	paddle
Maid	maiden	Star	asterisk
Man	manikin	Stream	streamlet
Mole	molecule	Swan	cygnet
Mouth	muzzle	Table	tablet
Nose	nozzle	Throat	throttle
Nurse	nursling	Thumb	thimble
Pack	packet	Top	tip
Park	paddock	Tower	turret
Part	particle	Verse	versicle
Pile	pillow	Weak	weakling
		Young	youngling

QUESTIONS

- 1 Give the diminutives of *man, goose, dear, lance*

(C U 1886)

- 2 Give the diminutives of any *four* of the following —
Duck, lamb, stream, isle, hill, lass

(C U 1915)

- 3 Give the diminutives of any *four* of the following —
Man, duck, stream, hill, goose, flower

(C U 1917)

CHAPTER VIII

PRONOUNS

1 Classification —

1 Personal—I, we, thou, you, ye, me, thee

2 Demonstrative—He, she, it, they, this, that, such, etc

3 Reflexive—Myself, yourself, himself, etc

4 Relative—Who, which, that, as, what, whoever, etc

5 Interrogative—Who, which, what

6 Distributive—Each, either, neither

II Distinction between a Relative pronoun and a Demonstrative pronoun—

A demonstrative pronoun simply refers to a noun mentioned before. A relative pronoun not only refers to a noun mentioned before, but it also joins two sentences together, as—

He has given me a book, I do not like *that* (demonstrative)

I have lost the book *that* he gave me (relative)

III Reflexive pronouns are used —

(1) To denote that the person or thing does something to himself or itself, as, He killed *himself*.

(2) For the sake of emphasis, as, The teacher *himself* could not do this

IV Various uses of it—

(1) *It* has a backward reference to a noun or phrase or clause, as, The rose is a lovely flower, *it* is called the queen of flowers. To get up early in the morning is a good practice, *it* makes one healthy and wise. He has stolen the book, but he will not confess *it*.

(2) *It* has a forward reference to a phrase or clause, as, *It is pleasant to walk in the morning* (phrase) *It is clear that you have been deceived* (clause)

(3) *It* is sometimes used indefinitely, as, *It rains*

(4) *It* is used for the sake of emphasis, as, *It was you that said so*

V Restrictive and Co ordinating uses of the Relative pronouns

Who and **which** have two uses —

(1) They have a **Restrictive** force when they point out a particular person or thing, as, The man *who* came to you has been arrested I have lost the book *which* you lent me

(2) They have a **Co ordinating** force when they may be replaced by a conjunction and a pronoun, as, I met your brother *who* (=and he) advised me to leave the place at once

That as a relative pronoun is always used restrictively, and never co ordinatingly It is therefore incorrect to say—"His father, *that* is ill, is going to Simla," because it means that he has more fathers than one, which is absurd The sentence should be—"His father, who is ill, is going to Simla "

VI That is preferable to who or which after—

(1) An adjective of the superlative degree, as—He was the *first* Indian *that* went to England

(2) Ordinal numeral adjectives, as—He was the *third* European *that* came to India

(3) Same, only, all, any, etc, as—This is the *same* book *that* I lost The *only* patron *that* I had is dead *All that* glitters is not gold *Any boy that* violates the rules shall be punished

(4) A negative, as—*No man that* is not virtuous can ever be happy

- (5) The interrogative *who*, as—*Who that* has common sense will do this ?
- (6) A noun whose gender is doubtful ; as—The *child that* was born yesterday is ill
- (7) A joint reference to persons and animals or things ; as—He spoke of men and countries that he had seen
- (8) An antecedent introduced by *it* as—It was you that said so

CHAPTER IX

ADJECTIVES & COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1. Classification of Adjectives .—

- 1 Qualitative adjectives rich, large, brave, happy, useful
- 2 Quantitative adjectives much, little, enough, sufficient, half, whole, no, some, any.
- 3 Proper adjectives Indian, English
- 4 Distributive adjectives each, every, either, neither
- 5 Numeral adjectives —

A Definite

- (a) Cardinal one, two, three, four, five
- (b) Ordinal first, second, third.
- (c) Multiplicative single, double, two-fold, triple

B Indefinite

All, some, many, few, several

Pronominal adjectives —

- (a) Demonstrative . the, this, that, such, yon (definite) ,
 1, an, a certain, another (indefinite)

- (b) Interrogative what, which
 (c) Relative what, which
 (d) Possessive my, your, thy, his, her

II Comparison of Adjectives

1 Adjectives of one syllable and some adjectives of two syllables form the comparative by adding *er* or *-r*, and the superlative by adding *est* or *-st* —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
High	higher	highest
Godly	godlier	godliest

2 Most adjectives of two syllables and all adjectives of more than two syllables are compared by adding *more* and *most* to the positive —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
Generous	more generous	most generous

3 Adjectives of two syllables ending in *y* or *le* may be compared either way —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Happy	happier or more happy	happiest or most happy
Noble	nobler or more noble	noblest or most noble

4 For the sake of *euphony* any adjective may be compared by *more* and *most*, as, more dry, more thin, most thin

5 All adjectives may be compared by adding *less* and *least*, as, less happy, least happy, less powerful, least powerful

III Some Adjectives are Compared irregularly

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Bad, evil, ill	worse	worst
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost, first
Forth	further	furthest
Good, well	better	best
Hind	hinder	hindmost, hindermost
In	inner	inmost, innermost
Late	later, latter	latest, last
Little	less, lesser	least
Many, much	more	most
Near	nearer	nearest, next
Nigh	nigher	nighest, next
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest
Out	outer utter	{ utmost, outmost, uttermost, outer- most
Up	upper	upmost, uppermost

IV Adjectives without a Comparative form —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Head	headmost
Northern	northernmost
Southern	southernmost
Top	topmost

V. Comparatives followed by *to* instead of *than*

Superior, inferior, senior, prior, etc. are followed by *to* instead of *than*

VI Comparatives followed by *of* instead of *than*

When selection is meant, "of" is used instead of "than",
as, He is the stronger *of* the two

VII Comparatives followed neither by *than* nor by *to*

Former, elder, hinder, upper, inner, latter, outer, utter, interior, major, minor, etc., are used as Positive adjectives and are followed neither by *than* nor by *to*

VIII Some words are either **adverbs** or **prepositions** in the positive degree, but adjectives in the **Comparative** and **Superlative** degrees.

Far, forth, in, out, up

IX Superlative of eminence

When there is no express comparison, the superlative is used by way of eminence, as, This is a *most* useful book
They received us in the *kindest* possible manner

X Adjectives that cannot be compared

The following adjectives cannot have degrees of comparison —

- 1 All pronominal adjectives
- 2 All numeral adjectives except *many* and *few*
- 3 All quantitative adjectives except *much* and *little*
- 4 All proper adjectives
- 5 All distributive adjectives
- 6 Adjectives expressing *shape or matter* as, square, circular, round, earthen, golden, wooden.
- 7 Adjectives expressing qualities not capable of *increase* or *diminution* as, perfect, extreme, blue, annual, monthly, empty, false, chief, universal, dead, supreme, infinite, eternal

XI The two uses of adjectives

- 1 Attributive use—Adjectives are said to be used *attributively*, when they qualify nouns directly, as, *good* boy, *ill* news, *white* rose

2 Predicative use—Adjectives are said to be used *predicatively*, when they qualify nouns indirectly, as, He is *good*, Ram is *ill*, the rose is *white*

XII. Adjectives that are always used *predicatively* :—

My brother is *ill* My sister is *well* I am *certain* (sure) he will not come back to day The man was *ashamed* of his conduct My mother is *alone* at home My father is *alive* The woman is *afraid* Ram was *asleep* when the thief entered the house These two words are *alike* Ram was not *aware* of his faults The girl was *awake* John is *content*

XIII. The adjectives *enough* and *else* are idiomatically placed after their nouns, as, He had money *enough* Some body *else* did this

XIV *Each, every few, a few, etc*

Each—refers to one of two or more, and can be used both as an adjective and as a pronoun, as, The two boys had *each* a book The fifteen boys had *each* a knife A couple of blankets was supplied to *each* bed The father left an equal share of his property to *each* (pronoun) of his sons

Every—refers to one of three or more, and is always used as an adjective only, as, *Every* boy out of the fifteen present received a prize. *Every* man is accountable to God for his conduct.

Few—conveys a negative idea, and means "not many" as, I have a *few* (not many) friends in Calcutta

A Few—conveys an affirmative idea, and means "some at least", as, I have a *few* (some though the number is small) friends in Calcutta

The Few—conveys a negative as well as an affirmative idea at the same time; as, *The few* friends I had left me or

after another=(1) The friends I had were not many (negative) (2) I had some friends and all of them left me (affirmative)

Little—conveys a negative idea, and means “not much”,
 is, He had *little* courage

A little—conveys an affirmative idea, and means “some at least”, as, He had a *little* courage

The little—conveys a negative as well as an affirmative idea at the same time, as, I drank *the little* milk I could procure=(1) The milk I could procure was not much (negative), (2) I could procure some milk and drank the whole amount (affirmative)

Many—is applied to *number*, as, I gave him *many* rupees
Many soldiers were killed in that battle

Much—is applied to *quantity*, as, He manifested *much* interest in the welfare of the family I gave him *much* money

Many a—“many a” is always followed by a noun in the *singular* number, as, “*Many a* flower is born to blush unseen”

A many—“a many” is always followed by noun in the *plural* number, as, ‘In the Greek camp, there were *a many* Achæans that longed for home’

A great many—this phrase is more common in prose than “many a” or “a many,” and is used to denote a *large number*, as, I have gone through *a great many* books

All—indicates both number and quantity and is plural or collective according to sense, as, *All* the books of the library were stolen I drank *all* the milk *All* that glitters is not gold *All* India protested against the proposal

Whole—is generally used with plural common nouns, as, *Whole* districts were inundated by the flood

The whole—is used before singular common nouns and is followed by "of" when used before proper nouns, as, Before midnight *the whole* army was in motion, *The whole* of Bengal deplored his loss

The first two—denotes the first and the second of one series, as, the first two boys of the third class are absent = the first boy and the second boy of the third class are absent

The two first—denotes the first of two series, as, The two first boys of the second and third classes are absent = the first boy of the second class and the first boy of the third class are absent

QUESTIONS

I Give the *positives* of—latter, further, next (C U 1900.)

Ans	Words	Positives
	Latter	late
	Further	forth
	Next	near or nigh

2 Compare, or state your reason for not comparing—circular, hot, brazen, fore, pretty, nigh, free, sufficient

(C U 1902)

Ans	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Hot	hotter	hottest
	Fore	former	foremost, first
	Pretty	{ prettier, { more pretty	{ prettiest, { most pretty
	Nigh	nigher	nighest, next

Circular } —Adjectives expressing *shape* or *matter* cannot be
Brazen } compared

Free, } —Adjectives expressing qualities not capable of
Sufficient } increase or diminution cannot be compared

3 Give the *comparatives* where they exist in the case of the following —Unhappy, complete, golden, ridiculous, speedy, godly, round unique lunar (C U. 1905)

Ans	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
-----	-----------------	--------------------

Unhappy

more unhappy

Ridiculous

more ridiculous

Speedy

speedier, more speedy

Godly

godlier, more godly

Golden, } —Adjectives expressing *shape* or *matter* cannot
 Round } be compared.

Complete, } —Adjectives expressing qualities not capable
 Unique, } of *increase* or *diminution* cannot be
 Lunar } compared

4 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference between —Elder, older (1910, 1912), farther, further, first, foremost (1912), nearest, next, latter, later (1911), less, lesser, outer, utter

! .Ans

✓ Elder—is applied to persons of the same family and is never followed by *than* as, John is my *elder* brother

✓ Older—is applied to things as well as to persons in general and is followed by *than*, as, This house is *older* than that Robert is *older* than Charles

✓ Eldest—is applied to first-born child, brother, sister, etc., as, My *eldest* son is a clerk His *eldest* sister died at the age of ten

✓ Oldest—is applied to things as well as to persons in general, as, This is the *oldest* tree in the garden Ram Babu is the *oldest* man in the town

Farther—denotes *greater distance*, as, Rangoon is *farther* from Calcutta than Chittagong

Further—denotes *something additional* or *something more in advance*, as, you need not cite *further* instances I have nothing *further* to say on this subject

First—denotes *order* or *position*, as, He was the *first* man to speak

✓ **Foremost**—means *most conspicuous*, as, "Sir Syed Ahmed was the *foremost* Mahomedan of the last century"

✓ **Nearest**—refers to *distance*, as, This tank is the *nearest* to our house

✓ **Next**—refers to *order* or *position*, as, My house is *next* to yours

✓ **Latter**—denotes *order* and is opposed to *former*, as, I met both John and Robert, the *former* (John) at once recognised me, but the *latter* (Robert) could not

✓ **Later**—denotes *time* and is opposed to *earlier*, as, A *later* telegram informed us of the victory of the English

✓ **Last**—denotes *order*, as, Ram is the *last* boy in the class

✓ **Latest**—denotes *time*, as, This is the *latest* edition of the book

✓ **Less**—is used both as an adverb and as an adjective, as, The king was *less* powerful than his father (adverb). If all men were honest, there would be much *less* poverty and misery in the world (adjective)

✓ **Lesser**—is used only as an adjective, as, Choose the *lesser* evil of the two

✓ **Outer**—denotes *position*, as, The diameter of the *outer* circle is five feet

✓ **Utter**—denotes *degree*, as, Dishonesty was the only cause of his *utter* failure

5 Construct sentences to illustrate the use of *few* and *a few* (C U 1911, 1916)

CHAPTER X

ARTICLES

1 The Indefinite Article "A"

A is used—

- 1 Before a consonant , as, a boy, a horse, a history, a year, a woman
2. Before the long sound of *u* , as, a university, a useful thing, a European, a eulogy, a unit, a ewe.
- 3 Before *o* sounded as *wu* , as, a one-eyed deer, a one-pound note

II The Indefinite Article "An"

An is used—

- 1 Before a vowel , as, an ocean, an uncle, an old man
- 2 Before a silent *h* , as, an heir, an hour, an honest man
- 3 Before an aspirated *h* when the accent is not on the first syllable , as, an hotel, an hypothesis, an historical event
- 4 Before single consonants, when they begin with a vowel sound , as, an M A , an L M S

III Different meanings of "A"

A is used to denote—

- 1 A species A cow (the whole species of cows) is a useful animal
- 2 Every The doctor calls here twice a (every) month
- 3 One A bird in hand is worth two in the bush
- 4 A certain There was a poor Brahmin at Burdwan
- 5 A kind of This must be a precious metal
- 6 Some I have a (some) chance of success

VI Rules for the use of "The" —

1 "The" is used before common nouns when they are separately defined by adjectives, adjectival phrases or clauses , as, The white flower The man whom we saw yesterday. The streets of Calcutta The way to be happy.

2 "The" is used before a common noun to indicate a species , as, The lion (lions as a class) is the king of beasts.

3 "The" is used before a common noun as a substitute for the possessive pronoun , as, He struck me on the (my) head.

4 "The" is used before nouns that represent well-known objects , as, The sun, the ocean, the earth

5 "The" is used before the names of rivers, gulfs, seas, oceans, groups of islands, mountain ranges, descriptive names of countries, and the names of holy books , as, The Ganges, the Persian Gulf, the Red Sea, the Indian Ocean, the Andaman Islands, the Himalayas, the Punjab, the Ramayan.

6 "The" is used before an adjective to indicate a class of persons , as, The virtuous (virtuous men) are really happy

7 "The" is used before superlatives and words used in a superlative sense , as, The best boy, the head boy

8 "The" is sometimes used to express an abstract notion , as, All the father (fatherly feelings) rose in his heart The future (futurity) is dark

9 "The" is sometimes used as an adverb before comparatives , as, The more we get, the more we desire.

V Omission of the articles

1 No article is used before proper nouns, material nouns and abstract nouns, except when they are used as common nouns

2 No article is used before a common noun when it is used in its widest sense , as, *Man* is mortal.

3. No article is used before a **common** noun, when it is used to denote an object with regard to its **nature**, and not as an **individual** to be distinguished from other things, as, This is a species of *dog*

4 No article is used before a **common** noun in the **plural** number, except when it is **particularized**, as, *Boys* love to play But we should say—"The *boys* of this village"

5 No article is used before **common** nouns, when they are qualified by **pronominal** or **distributive**, or most of the **numeral** adjectives, as, *My* book, *every* boy, *no* pen

6 No article is used before a **common** noun in the **vocative** case, as, Come here, *friend*.

7 No article is used before the names of **single** **mountains** or **single** **islands**, as, Everest, Ceylon

8 No article is used before the names of **streets**, the names of **languages** and the names of certain **diseases**, as, Bowbazar Street, English, fever

9 No article is used before a **common** noun indicating rank, occupation, etc, when it is used as a **complement** to the verb, as, He was made *king*, he turned *shoe-maker*, she is *sister* to my father

10 No article is usually put before **titles** when they are used appositionally either before or after **proper** nouns, as, *Lord* Tennyson, *Queen* Victoria, Victoria, *Queen* of England

11 No article is used before **common** nouns when they go in **pairs**, as,—Both *husband* and *wife* were punished The black bee wanders from *flower* to *flower* The school was on fire—*door* and *window*, *bench* and *table* were in a blaze

12 No article is used in several idiomatic phrases, as to set *foot* on, to leave *school*, to keep *house*, to send *word*, to lose *heart*, on *earth*, at *school*, to take *ship*

QUESTIONS

1 Explain clearly the general rules for the use of "The"
(C. U. 1892)

2 Explain the difference in meaning, if any, due to the presence or absence of *the* in the following —(C U. 1905)

(a) The *poor* are meritorious

Poor men should be kindly treated by their neighbours

(b) He had *few* friends

The *few* friends he had gathered round him.

(c) *Man* is mortal

The *man* who can do this has no humanity in him

(d) The *love* of God passeth all understanding

Love hath he found in the cottages of the poor

Ans. (a) The *poor* are meritorious

The poor = the class of persons who are poor Here "the" denotes a class

Poor men should be kindly treated by their neighbours

Poor men = all men who are poor, or poor men generally.

Thus both "the poor" and "poor men" mean the same thing.

(b) He had *few* friends

Few friends = a very small number of friends, not worth mentioning

The *few* friends he had gathered round him

The *few* friends = all of his friends who were not many

(c) *Man* is mortal

Man = any man or men generally Here "man" is used in its widest sense

The *man* who can do this has no humanity in him

The *man* = not all men, but only that particular man who can do this has no humanity in him Here "man" is particularized by "the"

(d) The *love* of God passeth all understanding

The love—that particular love, namely, the love of God,
not the love of men Here “love” is particularized by “the ”

Love hath he found in the cottages of the poor

Love—it does not refer to any particular kind of love

CHAPTER XI

VERBS

1 Transitive verbs are used intransitively—

(a) When the action indicated by the verb is made general ,
as, Fire *burns* He does not *hear*

(b) When the reflexive pronoun is omitted , as, The earth
moves (itself) He *drew* (himself) near me

(c) When an adverb is added to the verb , as, Cholera
has *broken out*

11 Intransitive verbs are used transitively—

(a) When they are used in a causal sense , as, He *ran* a
thorn into my finger = He caused a thorn to run into my
finger The groom *walked* the horse = The groom caused the
horse to walk

(b) When prepositions are added to them , as, He *laughed*
at me He was unable to *withstand* the attack

(c) When they take cognate objects , as, They *ran* a race.
He *wept* bitter tears

III Causal forms of Verbs —

<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Causal forms</i>
✓Bite	bait
Dive	dip
✓Drink	drench
✓Fall	fell
✓Lie	lay
Quail	quell
Rise	raise
✓Sit	set

IV Factitive verbs and Objective complements

Some transitive verbs require not only an object, but also some other word or words to give a complete sense. These verbs are called **Factitive**, and the word or words necessary to give a complete sense are called **Objective complements**.

People *made* him *king*

I *saw* him *going*

V Intransitive verbs of incomplete predication and Subjective complements

Some intransitive verbs require some other word or words to give a complete sense. These verbs are called **Intransitive verbs of incomplete Predication**, and the word or words necessary to give a complete sense are called **Subjective complements**.

He was ill (Subjective complement)

He appears to be rich (Subjective complement)

VI. Impersonal verbs

Impersonal verbs are those that take *it* for their subject and a personal pronoun for their object, as, *It behoves me, methinks, meseems*

VOICE.

I **Voice** is that form of the verb which shows whether the subject of the verb *acts* or is *acted upon*

II. An **Intransitive verb** cannot be used in the **Passive voice**, unless it takes a cognate object, or becomes transitive by means of a preposition

III Some transitive verbs are **Active** in form, but **Passive** in sense

Milk *tastes* sweet = Milk is sweet when it is tasted

The bed *feels* hard = The bed is hard when it is felt

The book *is printing* = The book is being printed

IV **Active voice** changed into **Passive voice** -

Active Fortune favours the industrious-

Passive The industrious are favoured by fortune

Active He has fought a good fight

Passive A good fight has been fought by him

Active They objected to my proposal.

Passive My proposal was objected to by them

Active I spoke to him

Passive He was spoken to by me

Active He teaches me English

Passive { I am taught English by him
Or

{ English is taught me by him

Active , Whom does he look for ?

Passive Who is looked for by him

Active They say that you did that

Passive You are said to have done that

Active Her skill surprised the spectators

Passive The spectators were surprised at her skill

Active Tell him to go to the doctor

Passive Let him be told to go to the doctor

Active	Post the letter at once
Passive	Let the letter be posted at once
Active	He has written to my mother
Passive	My mother has been written <i>to</i> by him
Active	His conduct displeased his teacher
Passive	His teacher was displeased <u>at</u> his conduct.
Active	Your son has dissatisfied the teacher
Passive	The teacher has been dissatisfied <i>with</i> your son
Active	Ram is beating Jadu
Passive	Jadu is being beaten by Ram.

MOOD

I Mood is the form of the verb which shows the *manner* of an action

II Uses of the Subjunctive mood —

The **Subjunctive Mood** is used :—

- (1) To express a wish , as, God save the King = May God save the king
- (2) To express a purpose , as, I give you the money that you may buy a book I kept your money lest you should lose it
- (3) To express a doubtful or denied condition, or an uncertain future event , as, If it rain, I will not go out
- (4) To express an intention not yet carried out , as, My sentence is that the prisoner be hanged
- (5) With an imperative sense , as, Happen what may, I will go
- (6) Elliptically , as, Scratch a Russian, you will find a Tartar (if you scratch, etc)

III Distinction between the **Simple or Noun Infinitive** and the **Gerundial Infinitive**

The **Simple** infinitive is used—

(1) As the subject to a verb, as, *To pass* the examination is not a matter of joke.

(2) As the object to a verb, as, The virtuous do not fear *to die* He wants *to play*

(3) As a complement to a verb, as, He seems *to be* rich

(4) As an object after the prepositions *but, except, than, about*, as, They did nothing *but laugh* He was *about to die* They do nothing else *than play*

(5) Absolutely in exclamation, as, Thus *to live* the life of a beggar!

The **Gerundial** Infinitive is used to express the purpose, the cause, the condition, or the result of an action It can be used—

(1) To qualify an adjective, as, I am slow *to write*

(2) To qualify a noun, as, A house *to let*

(3) To qualify a verb, as, I came *to see* you

(4) Parenthetically, as, *To tell* you the truth, I suffered a heavy loss

IV Omission of *to*, the sign of the Infinitive mood

To is omitted—

(1) After the verbs—*behold, bid, dare* (venture), *feel, hear, know, let, make, need, please, see*, etc

I *beheld* the man come (to come) by this way

He *dared* not say (to say) so

Please come (to come) here

Exceptions—

(a) When any of these verbs (except *let*) is used in the *passive* voice, *to* is not omitted after it —

Ram was heard *to say*

He was made *to stand* up

They were *let go*

(δ) When the verb *dare* is affirmative, *to* is not omitted after it —

He *dares* to do this.

(2) After the auxiliaries—*can, do, have, may, must, shall, should, will, would,*

(3) After *had better, had rather, had sooner, had as soon, as, but, except, and than*

You *had better* go (to go) home

We did nothing *but* weep (to weep)

I cannot *but* comply with his request

He is better able to write *than* read (to read)

V. The Present and perfect Infinitives.

The **Present infinitive** can be used with any tense of the principal verb ; as,—I *intend* to go I *intended* to go

The **Perfect Infinitive** is used only when the action denoted by it is regarded as completed before the time denoted by the principal verb , as—He appears to *have been* rich = His appearance shows that he was rich before, but is not so at the present moment

TENSE

I The **Present tense** is used—

(1) To express a universal truth , as—Man is mortal

(2) To express a custom or habit , as—I go there every day The lark sings.

(3) To express a present act , as—I come here not as an enemy, but as a friend

(4) To quote authors , as—Shakespeare says, ‘The course of true love never runs smooth ’

(5) To describe past events which is called the **Historic present** , as—Babar crosses the plains, Ibrahim opposes him with a large army

(6) To express future time, as—I go to Calcutta to-morrow.

II The Present Perfect tense is used—

(1) To express an action just finished, as—He *has written* the letter

(2) To express a past action the results of which still continue, as—He *has insulted* me I *have been deceived* by him.

(3) To express an action done in a space of time not yet fully exhausted, as—It *has rained* all the week

Shall and Will

I Rules for the use of Shall and Will

(1) **Shall** in the first person indicates *simple futurity*, in the second and third persons, it indicates *promise, threat, command, or compulsion* —

I shall be fined (simple futurity)

You shall go to the town (command)

He shall come to me (compulsion)

(2) **Will** in the first person indicates *intention or determination* on the part of the speaker, in the second and third persons, it indicates *simple futurity* —

I will pay you the money to-morrow (promise)

You will find it there (simple futurity)

He will stay here (simple futurity)

(3) In asking questions “shall” indicates *simple futurity, command or desire* in the first person, *simple futurity* in the second person, and *command or desire* in the third person —

Shall I die, if I drink this? (simple futurity)

Shall I remit the sum? (desire or command)

Shall you write to him ? (simple futurity)

Shall he write to John ? (command or desire)

(4) In asking questions "will" is never used in the first person. It indicates *intention* in the second person and *simple futurity* in the third person —

Will you go to Calcutta ? (intention)

Will he go to Calcutta ? (simple futurity)

✓ II Examples of Shall and Will —

(1) I *shall* ask him some questions = I am going to ask him some questions in future. Here "shall" denotes *simple futurity*.

(2) I *will* ask him some questions = I am determined to ask him some questions in future. Here "will" denotes *futurity* with the additional idea of *determination*.

(3) You *will* not tell a lie = You are not going to tell a lie in future. Here "Will" denotes *simple futurity*.

(4) You *shall* not tell a lie = I command you not to tell a lie. Here "shall" denotes *command*.

(5) The school *will* remain closed—This indicates mere futurity and may be said by a teacher as well as by a student.

(6) The school *shall* remain closed—This indicates a *command* and may be said by the Head Master.

(7) You *shall* be fined = You shall be fined by some one's command.

(8) I *will* not go alone = I am determined that others must accompany me.

(9) I *shall* not go alone = Other persons are likely to go with me.

(10) You shall receive the book to-morrow. = I promise that the book will be given to you to-morrow.

(11) If he comes here, he *shall* be flogged — This indicates a *threat*

(12) I *shall* be drowned and nobody *will* save me = I am likely to be drowned, as there is none to save me

(13) I *will* be drowned and nobody *shall* save me = I am determined to be drowned and refuse any help from others

(14) He *shall* beg your pardon = I shall compel him to beg your pardon Here 'shall' indicates 'compulsion'

(15) *Shall* I remit the money to day ? = Do you command or desire me to remit the money to day ?

(16) *Shall* I die, if I drink this ? = Am I likely to die if I drink this ? This indicates a *simple enquiry* as to future events

(17) *Shall* you go to Calcutta ? — This indicates a *simple enquiry* as to a future action

(18) *Will* you go to Calcutta ? = Do you intend to go to Calcutta ?

(19) *Shall* he go to Calcutta ? = Do you command or desire him to go to Calcutta ?

(20) *Will* he go to Calcutta ? — This indicates a *simple enquiry* as to some future action

✓ **Do, Have, May, Can, Must, Should, Would**

I Do is used—

(1) As a principal verb, as, I *did* that again.

(2) For the sake of emphasis, as, I *do* love you

(3) For the sake of using a negative, as, They *do* not love you.

(4) For the sake of asking a question, as, *Did* you go to school ?

(5) In the sense of sufficiency , as, A bit of paper will *do* (suffice)

(6) As a substitute for other verbs , as, He does not love you so much as I *do* (love)

II Have is used—

(1) To denote *possession* , as, We *have* three horses.

(2) To form the *Perfect Tenses* , as, *I have written* these letters

(3) To denote *compulsion* , as, I *have* to go to Burdwan to day

III May is used—

(1) To denote *permission* , as, You *may* go out ?

(2) To denote *possibility* , as, It *may* rain

(3) To denote *wish* , as, *May* you live long

IV Can is used—

(1) To denote *power* , as I *can* explain the passage

(2) To denote *permission* , as, You *can* do this if you like

V Must is used—

(1) To denote *compulsion* ; as, He *must* obey the orders of his master

(2) To denote *determination* , as, I *must* see you again before I leave Calcutta

(3) To denote *certainty* , as, They *must* have arrived by this time

(4) To denote *duty* , as, We *must* obey our parents

VI Should is used—

(1) To denote *duty* or *obligation* , as, We *should* take care of our health

(2) To denote *futurity* in past time , as, I said that I *should* go there

(3) To denote *supposition*, as, What is to become of us, *should* our projects fail?

(4) To denote *contingent futurity*, as, I *should* go with you if my father permits me

VII. *Would* is used—

(1) To denote *past determination*, as, He said tha the *would* go to Calcutta

(2) To denote habit, as, He *would* talk of his adventures

(3) To denote *wish*, as, *Would* that all were to follow such noble examples!

(4) To denote courtesy in question, as, *Would* you do this for me?

QUESTIONS

1 Write down the general rules for the use of *Shall* and *Will* (C U 1888, 1892)

2 Construct short sentences to illustrate the different uses of the verb "do" (C U 1892)

3 Construct sentences to illustrate the various uses of the present tense (C U 1895)

4 Give the rules for the correct use of the Subjunctive Mood in English (C U 1897)

5 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference between gerunds, participles and verbal nouns

(C U 1910)

Ans A Gerund is a verb and noun combined, as *Writing* is more difficult than *reading* He is addicted to *gambling* I ask the favour of your *granting* this

Participles are forms of the verb, having the nature of an adjectives, as, They are *fallen* angels No man worships the *sitting* sun

Verbal nouns are derived from verbs and have the same form as Gerund A Verbal noun is preceded by the

definite article and followed by the preposition *of*, whereas a Gerund has no article preceding it and no preposition following it, as, He loves *singing* old songs (gerund) He loves the *singing* of birds (verbal noun)

6 Explain the force of the word *have* in the following sentences — (C U 1916)

(i) We *have* three horses (ii) I *have* written these letters (iii) I *have* to go to Burdwan to day.

Ans (i) *Have* denotes *possession* and is used as a transitive verb. (ii) *Have* is an auxiliary verb used to form a *present perfect* tense (iii) *Have* denotes *compulsion*

CHAPTER XII

PAST TENSE AND PAST PARTICIPLE.

1. Formation of Past Tense and Past Participle.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Awake	{awoke, awaked	{awoke, awaked
Bear	bore	born, borne
Beget	begot, begat	begotten, begot
Behold	beheld	beheld, beholden
Bend	bent	bent
Bereave	{bereft bereaved	{bereft, bereaved
Beseech	besought	besought
Bet	bet, betted	bet, betted
Bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Bind	bound	bounden, bound

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blend	blended	blended, blent
Bless	blessed, blest	blessed, blest
Blow	blew	blown
Breed	bred	bred
Burn	burnt, burned	burnt, burned
Burst	burst	burst
Cast	cast	cast
Chide	chid	chidden, chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave (stick)	cleaved	cleaved
Cleave (split)	clove, cleft	cloven, cleft
Cling	clung	clung
Clothe	clothed, clad	clothed, clad
Cost	cost	cost
Creep	crept	crept
Crow	crowed	crowed
Cut	cut	cut
Dare (venture)	{durst dared	dared
Dare (challenge)	dared	dared
Deal	dealt	dealt
Die	died	died
Dig	dug, digged	dug, digged
Dip	dipped	dipped
Dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
Drink	drank	drunk, drunken
Drive	drove	driven
Drown	drowned	drowned
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Dye	dyed	dyed
Fall	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fell	felled	felled
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Flow	flowed	flowed
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore	forborne
Forbid	forbade	forbidden
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Gild	gilded, gilt	gilded, gilt
Grind	ground	ground-
Hang	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Hew	hewed	hewed, hewn
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Knit	knit, knitted	knit, knitted
Lade	laded	laden, laded
Lay	laid	laid
Let	let	let
Lie (rest, léan)	lay	lain
Lie (speake falsely)	lied	lied
Light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
Load	loaded	loaded, laden
Loose	loosed	loosed
Lose	lost	lost

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Mean	meant	meant
Melt	melted	molten, melted
Pass	passed	passed, past
Pen (enclose)	pent	pent
Pen (write)	penned	penned
Quit	quit, quitted	quit, quitted
Raise	raised	raised
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Rot	rotted	rotten, rotted
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
Seek	sought	sought
Seethe	seethed	sodden, seethed
Set	set	set
Sew	sewed	sewed, sewn
Shake	shook	shaken
Shave	shaved	shaven, shaved
Shear	sheared	shorn, sheared
Shed	shed	shed
Shew	shcwed	shewn
Shine	shone	shone
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Show	showed	shown
Shrink	shrank	shrunk, shrunken
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang	sung
Smk	sank	sunk, sunken
Sit	sat	sat

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Slay	slew	slain
Slide	slid	slidden, slid
Smell	smelt	smelt
Smite	smote	smitten, smit
Sow	sowed	sowed, sown
Spell	spelt	spelt
Spend	spent	spent
Spill	spilt	spilt
Spin	spun	spun
Spit (eject saliva)	spit, spat	spit, spat
Spit (put on a spit)	spitted	spitted
Spoil	spoilt, spoiled	spoilt, spoiled
Spread	spread	spread
Spring	sprang, sprung	sprung
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Strike	struck	struck, stricken
Sue	sued	sued
Swear	swore	sworn
Sweat	sweat	sweat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swelled, swollen
Swim	swam	swum
Swing	swung	swung
Tear	tore	torn
Thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived
Throw	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	trod	trodden, trod
Wake	waked, woke	waked
Wear	wore	worn

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Weave	wove	woven
Wet	wet, wetted	wet, wetted
Win	won	won
Wind (twist)	wound	wound
Wind (fill with wind)	winded	winded
Work	worked, wrought	worked, wrought
Wring	wrung	wrung

II Distinction between awaked and awoke, born and borne, etc

1 Awaked—is generally used transitively, as, He *awaked* me at 4 A M **Awoke**—is generally used intransitively, as, I *awoke* at 4 A M

2 Beheld—A more delightful scene than this I have never *beheld* before **Beholden**=Indebted, as, I should ever remain *beholden* to your father

3 Bereft—This man seems to be *bereft* of reason **Bereaved**—We offer our sincere condolence to the *bereaved* family

4 Born—He was *born* in England **Borne**—Mary had *borne* five children The patient was *borne* in a litter

5 Bound—They were *bound* by their promise **Bounded**—It is our *bounden* duty to serve our parents

6 Cloven—The cow has *cloven* hoofs **Cleft**—The ship was *cleft* in two parts **Cleaved**—He has always *cleaved* to me as a brother

7 Drunk—The youth has *drunk* much wine The nation was *drunk* with joy and pride **Drunken**—A sober enemy is better than a *drunken* friend

8 Got—He has *got* wealth by unfair means **Gotten**—*Ill-gotten* money often proves a curse

9 **Hanged**=killed by hanging, as, The murderer was *hanged* **Hung**=suspended, as, The picture was *hung* in the room

10 **Hewn**—This *hewn* log will be of no use to you, **Hewed**—The log was *hewed* (or *hewn*) by the carpenter.

11 **Hid**—The wealth of the miser was *hid* (or *hidden*) in the forest **Hidden**—This sentence contains a *hidden* meaning.

12 **Laid**—is the past tense and past participle of the verb *to lay*; as, Counsel *laid* all the facts before the Judge **Lain**—is the past participle of the verb *to lie*, as, They ploughed the farm that had long *lain* fallow

13 **Loosed**—is the past tense and past participle of the verb *to loose*, as, The generous public *loosed* their purse-strings in aid of the suffering humanity. **Lost**—is the past tense and past participle of the verb *to lose*, as, I have *lost* a book

14 **Melted**—The ice has *melted* **Molten**—This is a mass of *molten* lead

15 **Rotted**—The fish has *rotted* **Rotten**—There is small choice in *rotten* apples

16 **Shorn**—In winter, the trees are *shorn* of their leaves. **Sheared**—All the sheep were *sheared* on one day

17 **Showed**—is used when an outward demonstration is meant, as, He *showed* me the clothes **Shewed**—is used when an inward demonstration is meant, as, He clearly *shewed* that the clothes were purchased by his father

18. **Sodden**—*Sodden* flesh is very unwholesome **Seethed**—The potato has been *seethed* in hot water

19 **Sowed**—He has *sowed* the seeds of disease and premature death **Sewed**—The coat has not been properly *sewed* }

20 Struck—The bird has been *struck* with an arrow
Stricken—The *stricken* deer leaves the herd.

21 Sunk—Five vessels have *sunk* in the ocean
Sunken—The ship struck on a *sunken* rock

22 Worked—I have *worked* hard for the examination.
 He purchased a piece of beautifully *worked* cloth **Wrought**
 —The rise in the price of *wrought* iron was due to the great
 European war

CHAPTER XIII

ADVERBS

I Definition:—

An adverb is a word used to modify any part of speech except a noun or pronoun

II Classification —

Adverbs are subdivided into three classes —(1) Simple
 (2) Interrogative (3) Relative *Conjunctive*

Simple Adverbs —(a) Time —now, then, before, etc
 (b) Place —here, there, in, out, etc. (c) Number —once, twice, secondly, etc (d) Manner, quality, or state —thus, so, well, badly, etc (e) Quantity, extent, or degree —very, much, almost, partly, wholly, etc (f) Affirming or denying —yes, no, not, etc

Interrogative Adverbs —(a) Time —when, how long
 (b) Place —where, whence, whither (c) Number —how often (d) Manner, quality, or state —how (e) Quantity or degree —how far (f) Cause —why, wherefore

Relative adverbs —when, where, why, as, how, etc

III Position of Adverbs *conjunction - when as* Adverbs are usually placed — *how . C.E.C*

1 Before adjectives, prepositions, conjunctions, or other adverbs ; as—John is a *very* good boy We arrived *long* before the time A man is happy *only* when he is in sound health. We walked *very* slowly.

Exception—As an adverb the word *enough* is placed after the word it modifies , as—He was kind *enough* to grant me leave

2. After the Intransitive verbs , as—He died *happily*

Exceptions —The adverbs *always, never, ever, often, sometimes, generally, rarely, seldom* are usually placed before the verbs they modify , as—I *never* went there

3 Either before the Transitive verb or after the Object , as—He *sincerely* loves her , or he loves her *sincerely*.

4. Between the Auxiliary and the Principal verb . as—I did *not* go there I will *soon* return

5 At the beginning of a sentence when the adverb is used to modify the whole sentence , as—*Happily* he did not die

IV Adjectives used with the force of Adverbs

In certain phrases adjectives are often used with the force of *adverbs* ; as—to bid *fair* , to sell *cheap* *pretty* good , *wide* awake ; to work *hard* , to walk *straight* , to shine *bright* , to smell *sweet*

CHAPTER XIV

FORMATION OF NOUNS, VERBS, etc

1 Formation of Abstract Nouns

<i>Words</i>	<i>Abstract Nouns</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Abstract Nouns</i>
Act	action	Leak	leakage
Beggar	beggary	Lord	lordship
Bond	bondage	Man	manhood
Broker	brokerage	Patriot	patriotism
Cart	cartage	Person	personage
Coin	coinage	Pilgrim	pilgrimage
Consul	consulate	Poet	poetry
Cook	cookery	Port	portage
Coward	cowardice	Porter	portage
Creature	creation	Servant	Service
Elector	electorate	Slave	slavery
Excellent	excellence	Speaker	speech
Friend	friendship	Teacher	teachership
Hermit	hermitage	Woman	womanhood
King	kingship	Young	Youth

II Formation of Nouns from Verbs

<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>
Accomplish	accomplishment	Bite	bit
Apprehend	apprehension	Bless	bliss
Approve	approval	Break	breach
Assume	assumption	Burn	brand
Attach	attachment	Carry	carriage
Avow	avowal	Choose	choice
Bear	bier, birth	Commit	commitment
Belong	belongings	Compel	compulsion
Betray	betrayal	Comply	compliance
Bind	bond	Conceal	concealment

concession

<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>
Consume	consumption	Laugh	laughter
Contain	contents	Learn	lore
Deal	dole	Lend	loan
Deceive	deceit	Lose	loss
Decide	decision	Please	pleasure
Deny	denial	Practise	practice
Dig	dike, ditch,	Presume	presumption
Diminish	diminution	Pretend	pretence
Do	deed	Receive	receipt
Drink	draught	Redeem	redemption
Drive	drove	Remain	remainder
Eat	eatables	Reveal	revelation
Envelop	envelope	Respond	response
Escape	escapement	Seize	seizure
Exceed	excess	Sit	seat
Excel	excellence	Slay	slaughter
Exist	existence	Sneak	snake
Expel	expulsion	Sow	seed
Float	fleet	Speak	speech
Flow	flood	Steal	stealth
Fly	flight	Stick	stitch
Furnish	furniture	Strike	stroke
Gape	gap	Strive	strife
Give	gift	Succeed	success
Go	gait	Sustain	sustenance
Grieve	grief	Tell	tale
Grow	growth	Trace	track
Hate	hatred	Try	trial
Heal	health	Wake	watch
Hold	hilt	Weave	web
Know	knowledge	Write	writ

III Formation of Nouns from Adjectives

<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>
Able	ability	Humble	humility
Abundant	abundance	Just	justice
Accurate	accuracy	Large	largeness
Bankrupt	bankruptcy	Little	littleness
Brave	bravery	Local	locality
Brief	brevity	Long	length
Broad	breadth	Martyr	martyrdom
Brutal	brutality	Merry	merriment
Candid	candour	Moist	moisture
Casual	casualty	Monstrous	monstrosity
Certain	certainly	Mortal	mortality
Civil	civility	Necessary	necessity
Dear	dearth	New	newness
Deep	depth	Noble	nobility
Double	duplicity	Notorious	notoriety
Equal	equality	One	oneness
False	falsehood	Pious	piety
Ferocious	ferocity	Poor	poverty
Fertile	fertility	Popular	popularity
Fluid	fluidity	Proper	propriety
Free	freedom	Public	publicity
Gallant	gallantry	Pure	purity
Gay	gaiety	Real	reality
Grand	grandeur	Red	redness
Happy	happiness	Rigid	rigidity
Hard	hardship	Scarce	scarcity
High	height	Secret	secrecy
Human	humankind	Short	shortness
Humane	humanity	Splendid	splendour

<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>
Stupid	stupidity	Very	verity
Subtle	subtlety	Vital	vitality
Supreme	supremacy	Weak	weakness
True	truth	Wide	width
Vain	vanity	Wise	wisdom

IV Formation of Adjectives from Nouns.

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
Accident	accidental	Character	characteristic
Advice	advisable	Chastity	chaste
Air	airy	Child	childish
Angle	angular	Circle	circular
Asia	Asiatic	Circumstance	circumstantial
Author	authorial	Class	classical
Authority	authoritative	Clay	clayish
Autumn	autumnal	College	collegiate
Black	blackish	Colony	colonial
Blood	bloody	Condition	conditional
Body	bodily	Conscience	conscientious
Bond	binding	Contempt	cotemptible
Book	bookish	Courage	courageous
Bounty	bounteous	Coward	cowardly
Boy	boyish	Crime	criminal
Brass	brassy	Custom	customary
Brine	briny	Danger	dangerous
Brother	brotherly	Day	daily
Brute	brutal	Dew	dewy
Burden	burdensome	Dog	doggish
Bush	bushy	Earth	earthly
Calamity	calamitous	East	eastern
Centre	central	Elephant	elephantine

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
Emperor	imperial	Head	heady
Empire	imperial	Heart	heartly
Enemy	inimical	Heaven	heavenly
England	English	Heir	hereditary
Essence	essential	Hill	hilly
Europe	European	Home	homely
Example	exemplary	Ignorance	ignorant
Fable	fabulous	India	Indian
Famine	famished	Iron	irony
Father	fatherly	Irony	ironical
Fault	faulty	Island	insular
Fire	fiery	Joke	jocular
Fish	fishy	Joy	joyous
Flower	flowery	King	kingly
Force	forcible	Lady	ladyish
Fool	foolish	Land	landed
France	French	Line	lineal
Fraud	fraudulent	Lord	lordly
Friend	friendly	Love	lovely
Frost	frosty	Lustre	lustrous
Gas	gaseous	Machine	mechanical
Ghost	ghostly	Maiden	maidenly
Glass	glassy	Man	manly
Glory	glorious	Medicine	medicinal
God	godly	Memory	memorable
Gold	golden	Merchant	mercantile
Grass	grassy	Metal	metallic
Grief	grievous	Milk	milch
Habit	habitual	Might	mighty
Hand	bandy	Mirth	mirthful
Hair	hairy	Money	monetary

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
Month	monthly	Service	serviceable
Mother	motherly	Silk	silken
Muscle	muscular	Silver	silvery
Mystery	mysterious	Slave	slavish
Nature	natural	Snow	snowy
Neuter	neutral	Society	social
Night	nocturnal	Spain	Spanish
Number	numeral	Splendour	splendid
Orator	oratorical	Star	starry
Palace	palatial	Summer	summery
Particle	particular	Sun	sunny
Passion	passionate	Study	studious
Peace	peaceful	Sympathy	sympathetic
People	popular	Table	tabular
Philanthropy	philanthropic	Terror	terrible
Picture	picturesque	Thief	thievish
Play	playful	Title	titular
Population	populous	Tribe	tribal
Practice	practical	Trouble	troublesome
Price	precious	Tutor	tutorial
Pride	proud	Verb	verbal
Professor	professorial	Vice	vicious
Profit	profitable	Viceroy	viceregal
Prose	prosaic	Voice	vocal
Quarrel	quarrelsome	Year	yearly
Red	reddish	War	warlike
Ruin	ruinous	Water	watery
Sand	sandy	Week	weekly
School	scholastic	Will	wilful
Season	seasonable	Winter	wintery
Sense	sensible	Wood	wooden
Serpent	serpentine	Wool	woollen

V. Formation of Verbs from Nouns

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>
Advice	advise	Colony	colonise
Air	aerify	Company	accompany
Alphabet	alphabetise	Courage	encourage
Animal	animalise	Crime	incriminate
Apology	apologise	Critic	criticise
Authority	authorise	Custom	accustom
Bath	bathe	Danger	endanger
Battle	embattle	Deity	deify
Bed	imbed	Dew	bedew
Beauty	beautify	Drop	drip
Belief	believe	Economy	economise
Black	blacken	Electricity	electrify
Blood	bleed	Example	exemplify
Body	embody	Fable	fabulate
Bosom	embosom	Fame	defame
Brass	braise	Famine	famish
Breadth	broaden	Flower	flourish
Breath	breathe	Food	feed
Brood	breed	Fool	befool
Cage	encage	Force	enforce
Calf	calve	Fraud	defraud
Camp	encamp	Friend	befriend
Capital	capitalise	Fright	frighten
Centre	concentrate	Frost	freeze
Character	characterise	Fruit	fructify
Christian	christianise	Game	gambol
Cipher	decipher	Gas	gasify
Circle	encircle	Glass	glaze
Class	classify	Glory	glorify
Cloth	clothe	Gold	gild

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>
Grass	graze	Office	officiate
Güile	beguile	Origin	originate
Habit	habituate	Patron	patronise
Half	halve	Peace	pacify
Hand	handle	People	populate
Harmony	harmonise	Peril	imperil
Haste	hasten	Person	personate
Head	behead	Population	populate
Health	heal	Port	deport
Heir	inherit	Power	empower
Horror	horrify	Practice	practise
Idol	idolise	Price	prize
Island	insulate	Prison	imprison
Joy	enjoy	Red	reddeu
Justice	justify	Right	rectify
Knee	kneel	Salé	sell
Knot	knit	Sermon	sermonise
Life	live	Service	serve
Light	lighten	Shelf	shelve
Load	lade	Slave	enslave
Lustre	illustrate	Snare	ensnare
*Magnet	magnetise	Society	associate
*Mass	amass	Sooth	soothe
Memory	memorise	Spark	sparkle
*Monopoly ✓	monopolise	Substance	substantiate
Nation	nationalise	Sympathy	sympathise
Nature	naturalise	System	systematise
Necessity	necessitate	Table	tabulate
*Nest	nestle	Tale	tell
Neuter	neutralise	Term	terminate
Night	benight	Terror	terrify

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Verbs</i>
Thief	thieve	Vacancy	vacate
Throne	enthrone	Vapour	evaporate
Title	entitle	Vers	versify
Tomb	entomb	Vice	vitiate
Top	topple	Vigour	invigorate
Utility	utilise	Voice	vociferate

VI. Formation of Verbs from Adjectives.

<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Verbs</i>
Able	enable	Familiar	familiarise
Abundant	abound	Fat	fatten
Alien	alienate	Feeble	enfeeble
Artificial	artificialise	Fertile	fertilise
Base	debase	Fine	refine
Bitter	embitter	Finite	finish
Bold	embolden	Firm	confirm
Brief	abbreviate	Fond	fondle
Broad	broaden	Foul	defile
Certain	ascertain	Fresh	refresh
Cheap	cheapen	General	generalise
Civil	civilise	Glad	gladden
Clean	cleans	Hale	heal
Clear	clarify	Hard	harden
Cool	chill	Humble	humiliate
Dark	darken	Large	enlarge
Dear	endear	Liquid	liquefy
Deep	deepen	Little	belittle
Dense	condense	Long	lengthen
Different	differentiate	Low	lower
Equal	equalise	Mad	madden
False	falsify	Mean	demean

FORMATION OF NOUNS, VERBS, ETC

<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Verbs</i>
Moist	moisten	Solid	consolidate
New	renew	Special	specify
Noble	ennoble	Stable	establish
Particular	particularise	Strange	estrangle
Perpetual	perpetuate	Strong	strengthen
Poor	impoverish	Stupid	stupefy
Popular	popularise	Sure	ensure
Proper	appropriate	Sweet	sweeten
Public	publish	Thick	thicken
Pure	purify	Timid	intimidate
Real	realise	Vile	vilify
Rich	enrich	Venerable	venerate
Secret	secrete	Very	verify
Short	shorten	White	whiten
Sick	sicken	Wide	widen

VII Latin Adjectives

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
Blood	sanguine, sanguinary	East	oriental
Body	corporal, corporeal	Egg	oval
Brother	fraternal	End	final
Cat	feline	Eye	ocular
City	civic	Father	paternal
Cow	vaccine	Flesh	carnal
Day	diurnal	Flower	floral
Death	mortal	Foot	pedal
Daughter	filial	Friend	amicable
Dog	canine	God	divine
Eagle	aquiline	Hair	capillary
Ear	auricular	Hand	manual
Earth	terrestrial	Head	capital

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
Heart	cordial	Salt	saline
Heaven	celestial	Sea	marine
Hell	infernal	Sheep	ovine
Home	domestic	Ship	naval
Hope	sanguine	Side	lateral
Horse	equine	Sight	visible
Husband	conjugal	Sky	ethereal
King	royal, regal	Spring	vernal
Life	vital	Son	filial
Light	lucid	Sun	solar
Lion	leonine	Tooth	dental
Male	masculine	Town	urban
Man	human	Village	rural, rustic
Mind	mental	Water	aqueous, aquatic
Moon	lunar	Wife	conjugal
Mother	maternal	Will	voluntary
Mouth	oral	Woman	{feminine, & effeminate
Name	nominal		
Night	nocturnal	Womb	uterine
Nose	nasal	Wood	sylvan
Ox	bovine	Word	verbal
Place	local	World	mundane
Root	radical	Youth	juvenile

QUESTIONS

1 Form —(C U 1899)

(a) *Nouns* from—brutal, casual, grand, gallant

(b) *Adjectives* from—land, fire, brass, brine

(c) *Verbs* from—gold, white, spark, thief

2 Form *adjectives* from —peace, war, fish, body, metal,

boy

(C U 1901)

3. Form an *abstract* noun from each of the following — Happy, hard, just, long, scarce, weak. (C U 1903)

4 - (a) Form an *adjective* from each of the following — brass, earth, wool hair, bounty, passion, nature, ignorance, might. (C. U 1904)

(b) Form a *noun* from each of the following — grand, broad, brave, high, stupid, splendid, rigid, real, true (1904.)

(c) Form a *verb* from each of the following — alien, beauty, critic, gold, red, liquid, colony, wide, throne (1904)

5 Form an *adjective* from each of following, — child, picture, sense, heart, burden, contempt, silver, star (C U 1905)

6 Derive —(C U 1909)

(a) *Adjectives* from joke, school, fraud, autumn

(b) *Verbs* from fruit, peril, life, colony

(c) *Nouns* from reveal, respond, escape redeem

7 Form an adjective from *joy*, a verb from *rich*, an adverb from *cheer*, and a noun from *vital* Construct a short sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you (C U 1914)

Ans. Joy—joyful (adjective), as—The lady left for home with a *joyful* heart

Rich—enrich (verb), as—He wished to *enrich* himself by marriage

Cheer—cheerfully (adverb), as—The miller does his duties very *cheerfully*

Vital—vitality (noun), as—For two hours the boy showed no signs of *vitality*

8 Form an adjective from *melody*, a verb from *cheap*, a noun from *subtle*, and an adverb from *gloom* Construct a short sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you (C U 1915)

Ans. Melody—melodious (adjective) , as—The girl has a *melodious* voice

Cheap—cheapen (verb) , as—Famine *cheapens* labour.

Subtle—subtlety (noun) , as—Everyone was surprised at the unusual *subtlety* displayed by the girl

Gloom—gloomily (adverb) , as—On reading the letter, the widow sat *gloomily* for about two hours

9 Form a verb from *gold*, an adjective from *king*, a noun from *high* and an adverb from *mighty* Construct a short sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you (C U 1917)

Ans Gold—gild (verb) , as—It is wasteful excess to *gild* refined gold or to paint the lily

King—royal (adj) , as—He is a member of the *royal* family

High—height (noun) , as—What is the *height* of this wall ?

Mighty—mightily, (adv) , as—The king rejoiced *mightily* in heart for that his enemies were slain

10 Form a noun from *fluid*, an adjective from *sympathy*, a verb from *liquid*, and construct a short sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you, (C U 1918)

11 Form a verb from *head*, and an adjective from *care* and write a sentence to illustrate the meaning of each

(C U 1920)

CHAPTER XV

SINGLE WORDS FOR TWO OR MORE WORDS

1 Q & A Substitute a *single word* for the words in *italics* —

(1) A partner in a business *who takes no active share in the management of it* = Sleeping (partner) (2) His office is *one for which no salary is paid* = Honorary (3) This is

a bird of passage = Migratory (4) His plan cannot be put into practice = Impracticable (5) His motive is merely to get some money = Mercenary (6) His question was open to objections = Objectionable (7) A man who is not worthy of being chosen = Ineligible (8) His writing is such as cannot be read = Illegible (9) This word is no longer in use = Obsolete (10) A match in which neither party wins = Drawn (11) A book published after the death of its author = Posthumous (12) A child born after the death of its father = Posthumous (child) (13) A person who lives on vegetables = Vegetarian (14) An animal that lives on flesh = Carnivorous (15) A man who eats human flesh = Cannibal (16) An animal that lives on grass and herbs. = Graminivorous (17) Anything which is fit to be eaten = Eatable (18) His conduct is such as cannot be corrected = Incorrigible (19) A mystery which cannot be solved = Insoluble (mystery) (20) The point upon which a disputed question turns and which decides the case = Turning (point)

II Q & A Substitute a single word for the words in italics —

(1) His speech is such as cannot be understood = Unintelligible (2) This glass is liable to be easily broken = Brittle (3) A paper written by hand = Manuscript (4) A voice which cannot be heard = Inaudible (5) His loss can never be repaired = Irreparable (6) A person who can neither write nor read = Illiterate (7) A disease that ends only in death = Fatal (8) A speech made for the first time = Maiden (speech) (9) I am liable to be called to account for my actions. = Accountable (10) His character has an evil reputation = Notorious (11) He is a man who is not likely to be pleased. = Fastidious (12) A servant who takes no trouble about his duty = Neglectful (13) A thing which is too minute

to be perceived by the senses = Imperceptible (14) *The life of a person written by himself* = Autobiography (15) *An estate inherited from ancestors* = Patrimony (16) This is an animal *that lives on another* = Parasite

III Q & A Supply *one* word for the following words —

(1) To take no account of = to overlook (2) The time between noon and evening = afternoon. (3) With one voice = unanimously (4) One who plays a game for pleasure and not professionally = amateur (5) To pass the night in the open air = to bivouac (6) At the same time = simultaneously (7) An animal with two feet = biped (8) To cut off the head = to behead (9) An assembly of hearers = audience (10) To examine and verify by reference to vouchers, etc = to audit (11) A list of names, books, etc = catalogue, (12) A general pardon of political offenders = amnesty (13) One who is eighty years old = octogenarian (14) The want of government in a state = anarchy

IV Q & A Supply *one* word for the words in *italics* —

(1) A case *which creates sensation* = Sensational (case) (2) A reception *which is wanting in warmth of feeling* = Cold (reception) (3) A young man *who promises to be a great man in time* = Promising (young man) (4) Difficulties *which cannot be overcome* = Insurmountable (difficulties) (5) A man who *does not show proper respect* = Disrespectful (man) (6) An occurrence *that takes place every day* = Every day (occurrence) (7) A conclusion *that has been arrived at beforehand* = Foregone (conclusion) (8) A wound *that is likely to cause death* = Deadly (wound) (9) Courage *which a man ought to possess* = Manly (courage) (10) A letter *which does not bear the name of the writer* = Anonymous (letter) (11) A monster *that inspires fear in others* = Fearful (monster) (12) A man *who lacks courage* = Coward (13) A habit *that*

CHAPTER XVI

COMPOUND WORDS

QUESTIONS

Q. Give two *compound* words of each of the following classes —

- (a) *two nouns*, (b) *noun and adjective*, (c) *verb and noun*,
(d) *adverb and noun*, (e) *two verbs*, (f) *reduplicatives*

(C U 1898)

- Ans** (a) Rail-way, ring-finger
(b) Blood red, knee-deep
(c) Pick-pocket, dare-devil
(d) Out-law, over-coat
(e) Hear-say, make-believe
(f) Chit-chat, topsy turvy

Q & A Expand the following compounds into equivalent *phrases* using appropriate *prepositions* to connect the words of which they are formed —

(C U 1889)

Fire engine = engine for (quenching) fire Fire-escape = (a machine which enables people to) escape *from* fire Fire-proof = proof *against* fire Heart-sick = sick *at* heart Home sick = sick for home Blood thirsty = thirsty *for* blood Blood stained = stained *with* blood Horse-dealers = dealers *in* horses Star-gazers = gazers *at* stars Tea-cup = cup *for* tea Weather-wise = wise *in* weather Weather-bound = bound *by* weather Home bound = bound *for* home Hard-hearted = hard *of* heart Guess work = work *by* guess Self confidence = confidence *in* self

Q Form *compounds* from the following pairs of words and indicate the meaning of the compounds so formed —
head and hard, fist and close, gain and cross, finger and light, skin and thin, brass and face.

(C U 1901)

Ans Head and hard—hard-headed = shrewd, intelligent
 Fist and close—close fistcd = niggardly
 Grain and cross—cross grained = perverse,
 Finger and light—light fingered = thievish
 Skin and thin—thin skinned = irritable
 Brass and face—brass faced = impudent

Q. (a) Form *Compound nouns* in which the following are used *adjectivally*.—court, cart, lump, office, lamp, race, water, gate. (C. U 1902)

(b) Form *Compound Adjectives* in which the following are used *adverbially*.—knee, ear, weather, head, ice, stone, coal, snow (C. U 1902)

Ans. (a) Court—court-yard Lamp—lamp oil
 Cart—cart horse Race—race-horse
 Lump—lump-sugar Water—water bug
 Office—office bearer Gate—gate man.
 (b) Knee—skin deep Ice—ice-cold
 Ear—ear green. Stone—stone blind
 Weather—weather-bound Coal—coal black
 Head—head strong Snow—snow white

Q. (a) Form *Compound nouns* in which the following are used *adjectivally*.—air, earth, house, life, head, wood (C. U 1903.)

(b) Form *Compound adjectives* in which the following are used *adverbially*.—sky, foot, storm, skin, moon (C. U 1903)

Ans (a) Air—air-pump, Life—life-boat
 Earth—earth work Head—head ache.
 House—house rent Wood—wood block
 (b) Sky—sky-blue Skin—skin deep
 Foot—foot sore Sun—sun-burnt
 Storm—storm-bound. Moon—moon-struck

Q. (a) Form *Compound nouns* in which the following

are used as *adjectives* — blood, gun, sword, book, battle, birth, foot, hand, tooth (C. U 1904.)

(b) Form *Compound adjectives* in which the following are used as *adverbs* — fire, heart, machine, cloth, hard, hot, thick, right, sad (C U 1904.)

Ans (a) Blood—blood hound	Birth—birth-day
Gun—gun-powder	Foot—foot path
Sword—sword-play	Hand—hand cuff
Book—book-case	Tooth—tooth powder.
Battle—battle-field	
(b) Fire—fire-proof	Hot—hot-tempered
Heart—heart-sick	Thick—thick headed
Machine—machine made	Right—right-angled
Cloth—cloth-bound	Sad—sad faced

Q Form *Compound adjectives* in which the following are used as *adverbs* —

Air, bed, blood, breast, dog, hen, high, home, life, milk, post, purse, red, time, top, water, world, year.

Ans Air—air-built Bed—bed-ridden Blood—blood-thirsty Breast—breast-high Dog—dog-weary Hen—hen-pecked High—high-born Home—home-keeping Life—life long Milk—milk-white Post—post-free Purse—purse-proud Red—red-hot Time—time-tutored Top—top heavy Water—water-proof World—world-wide Year—year old

Q Form *Compound nouns* in which the following are used as *adjectives* —

After, arm, beauty, bull, butter, case, check, cheek, church, class, cloud, cock, copy, cork, corner, crown, cap, cut, ice, man

Ans. After—after image Arm—arm-chair Beauty—beauty-sleep Bull—bull dog Butter—butter milk Case—

case bottle Check—check clerk Cheek—cheek-bone
 Church—church-service. Class—class fellow Cloud—cloud-
 burst Cock—cock-fight Copy—copy-right Cork—
 cork screw Corner—corner-stone Crown—crown-prince
 Cup—cup-bearer Cut—cut-throat Ice—ice-cream Man—
 man-eater

Q Form **Compound adjectives** in which the following are used as **adverbs** —

Back, battle, beef, bell, bird, bull, cast, cat, child, club, coal, cold, cool, crest, long, one, short, 'wide

Ans Back—back-handed Battle—battle-scarred Beef—beef-witted
 Bell—bell-shaped Bird—bird-eyed Bull—bull-headed
 Cast—cast off Cat—cat eyed. Child—child-like
 Club—club-footed Coal—coal-black Cold—cold-blooded
 Cool—cool-headed Crest—crest-fallen Long—long-sighted
 One—one-sided Short—short-sighted Wide—wide-awake

Q Give the **Antonyms** of the following by adding a suitable prefix to each of them —

Ans

<i>Words</i>	<i>Antonyms</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Antonyms</i>
Active	inactive	Legitimate	illegitimate
Agreeable	disagreeable	Liberal	illiberal
Animate	inanimate	Logical	illogical
Attentive	inattentive	Loyal	disloyal
Correct	incorrect	Material	immaterial
Equal	unequal	Moderate	immoderate
Equality	inequality,	Moral	immoral
Honest	dishonest	Mortal	immortal
Interested	disinterested	Movable	immoveable
Lawful	unlawful	Noble	ignoble
Legal	illegal	Obedient	disobedient

<i>Words</i>	<i>Antonyms</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Antonyms</i>
Perfect	imperfect	Regular	irregular
Practicable	impracticable	Resistible	irresistible
Pure	impure	Sufficient	insufficient

Q Indicate the *meaning* of the following *compounds* —
 horse race, race horse, ring-finger, finger-ring, oil lamp,
 lamp-oil, flower-garden, garden-flower, rose-tree, tree-rose.

Ans Horse-race = a race run by horses, and not by any other animals or things.

Race-horse = a horse bred for racing and not for any other purpose

Ring-finger = the finger on which rings are put

Finger-ring = a ring for the finger and not any other kinds of ring

Oil-lamp = a lamp in which oil is used

Lamp oil = oil used in lamps

Flower-garden = a garden in which flowers grow

Garden-flower = a flower that grows in the garden and not in woods

Rose-tree = a tree that bears roses

Tree-rose = a rose that grows in trees

Q & A *Substitute a single compound* for each of the following —

(1) One who turns his coat *etc.*, abandons his principles or party = turn-coat (2) One who is both deaf and dumb = deaf-mute (3) A place strong to hold out against attack = strong hold (4) A man who can hit the mark = marksman (5) A man skilled in the use of swords = swordsman (6) A property held free of duty or rent = free hold (7) A goat that is allowed to escape into the wilderness = scape-goat (8) A child nursed or brought up by one who is not its parent = foster child (9) A person who stands near one = by stander

(10) Something that is given one to keep for the sake of the giver = keep-sake. (11) One who bears the same name as another = name-sake. (12) A house which shelters tender plants from the cold weather = green-house. (13) A man who has read many good authors = well-read (man). (14) The retiring room of actors in a theatre = green-room. (15) A person who steals from other men's pockets = pick-pocket.

Q Explain the following compounds — Air-tight, way-lay, back-bite, white-wash, home-sick, hush-money, sick nurse, sea-sick, up-start, cross-examine, ring-leader, brown-study, chicken-hearted, down-train, up-train, jail-bird

Ans Air-tight = so tight as not to admit air

Way-lay = to lie in the way for a man, i.e., to stop a man on the way for an evil purpose

Back-bite = to bite a person at the back, i.e., to speak ill of him in his absence

White-wash = to wash with a liquid which gives white colour

Home-sick = sick with yearning for home

Hush-money = money given as a bribe to hush or make one keep silent

Sick-nurse = a nurse for the sick

Sea-sick = sick because of the rolling of a vessel at sea

Up-start = one who has suddenly started up, i.e., risen from low life to wealth, etc.

Cross-examine = to question a person on all sides of a subject

Ring-leader = the leader in the ring of a dance, hence the head of a riotous body.

Brown study = absent-mindedness

Chicken-hearted = timid, cowardly

Down-train = a train proceeding from the principal terminus of the railway

HIDDEN TREASURE

Train = a train proceeding towards the principal terminus of the railway

bird = an offender who has often been in jail for his crimes

Q. & A. Substitute a *single compound* for each of the following —

- (1) A day given not to labour, but to amusement = holiday
(2) One who officiously tells the private concerns of others = tell-tale (3) A person who is deprived of the protection of the law = out-law (4) Anything set up to scare away crows or other birds = scare-crow (5) A person who is an agent between two parties = go-between (6) A written warrant granting permission to travel in a foreign country = pass port (7) A letter which is claimed by none = dead letter (8) An art by which writing is made shorter and easier = short-hand (9) A dealing in which no sincerity is to be found = double dealing.
(10) A house for the protection of mad men = mad house (11) One who blacks and cleans shoes = shoe black (12) One who steals anything from a shop = shop lifter (13) A pit dug for wild beasts to fall into = pit fall (14) A man addicted to sporting = sportsman (15) One who speaks for others = spokesman (16) A man who has charge of a boat = boatman.
(17) A man who is under a bond = bondsman (18) A man who is employed in trade = tradesman (19) One who fells trees = woodman or woodsman
-

CHAPTER XVII

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

Rules for turning a direct into an indirect speech —

1 The conjunction *that*, or *relative adverbs* are generally inserted before the reported speech —

Direct Ram says, "He is ill "

Indirect Ram says *that* he is ill

Direct . Ram said to me, "Are you going there ?"

Indirect Ram asked me *whether* I was going there

2 ✓ If the verb used by the reporter is in the **present** or in the **future** tense, the verb of the reported speech should remain unchanged —

Direct Ram says, "I am ill "

Indirect Ram says that he *is* ill

Direct . Ram will say, "I am going "

Indirect Ram will say that he *is* going

Direct He has told you, "I am ill "

Indirect He has told you that he *is* ill

3 ✓ If the verb used by the reporter is in the **past** tense, the **present** or the **future** tense (in the reported speech) should be changed into the **past** tense, and the **present-perfect** or the **past-tense** should be changed into the **past-perfect** —

Direct Ram said, "I am going there "

Indirect Ram said that he *was* going there

Direct . Ram said, "Jadu will go there "

Indirect . Ram said that Jadu *would* go there

Direct Ram said, "I have done that "

Indirect . Ram said that he *had done* that

Direct Ram said, "I went there "

Indirect . Ram said that he *had gone* there

4 If the reported speech states an action as **universally** or **habitually true**, the verb of the reported speech should remain unchanged —

Direct Ram said, "The earth moves round the sun "

Indirect Ram said that the earth *moves* round the sun

Direct Ram said, "Honesty is the best policy "

Indirect Ram said that honesty *is* the best policy

5 The person of *pronouns* and *verbs* in the reported speech should correspond to the person of the individual with reference to whom the speech is made —

Direct He said to me, "You are wrong "

Indirect He told me that *I* was wrong

Direct He said, "I am to blame "

Indirect He said that *he* was to blame

6 In Indirect Narration—

This is generally changed into *that*

These " *those*

Come " *go*

It " *that*

Here " *there*

Hither " *thither*

Hence " *thence*

Now " *then*

Thus " *so*

Hereby " *thereby*

Ago " *before*

To-day " *that day*

To-morrow " *the next day*

Yesterday " *the previous day*

Last night " *the previous night*

Next week " *the following week*

, In Indirect narration *shall* and *will* should be changed according to the rules for the use of *shall* and *will* —

Direct Ram says, "I shall go to Calcutta "

Indirect Ram says that he *will* go to Calcutta

Direct He said to me, "You will be rewarded "

Indirect He told me that I *should* be rewarded

8 When the reported speech is an *interrogative* sentence, the reporting verb *say* or *tell* should be changed into *ask* or *inquire* followed by a *conjunctive adverb* if necessary .—

Direct He said to me, "Are you well ?"

Indirect He *asked* me *if* I was well

9 In reporting *commands* or *requests*, some verbs expressing *command* or *request* should be used and the **Infinitive mood** should be substituted for the **Imperative mood** —

Direct Ram said to his servant, "Go there at once."

Indirect Ram *ordered* his servant *to go* there at once

Direct Ram said to his friend, "See me to-morrow "

Indirect Ram requested his friend *to see* him the next day

10. (a) When *let* occurs in direct speech so as to express a *proposal*, *let* should be changed into *should* and the reporting verb should be changed into *propose* —

Direct : He said to me, "Let us go there to-morrow "

Indirect He *proposed* that we *should go* there the next day

(b) 'But when *let* is not used to express a *proposal*, it should be changed according to the meaning —

Direct . Ram said, "Let him do that if he likes "

Indirect . Ram said that he *might* do that if he liked

11 (a) *Interjections* and *Interjectional phrases* should be omitted in indirect narration.

(b) In reporting *exclamations* or *wishes*, some verbs expressing *exclamation* or *wish* should be used and some new

word or words should be added in order to make the sense complete —

Direct Ram said to me, "How unfortunate you are !"

Indirect Ram exclaimed that I was very unfortunate

Direct Ram said, "Alas ! we are ruined "

Indirect Ram exclaimed with a sigh that they were ruined

Direct They cried out, "Bravo ! it is a capital hit !"

Indirect They cried out with applause that it was a capital hit

QUESTIONS

1 Rewrite the following passages converting them into Indirect forms of speech —(C U 1904)

(a) Portia said, "Myself and what is mine, to you and yours is now converted But yesterday Bassanio, I was the lady of this fair mansion, queen of myself, and mistress over these servants, and how this house, these servants, and myself, are yours, my lord, I give them with this ring," presenting a ring to Bassanio

(b) "O my dear love," said Portia, "despatch the business and be gone, you shall have gold to pay the money twenty times over, before this kind friend shall lose a hair by my Bassanio's fault, and as you are so dearly bought, I will dearly love you "

Ans (a), Portia said that herself and what was hers, was then converted to him and his Only the previous day, she was the lady of that fair mansion, queen of herself, and mistress over those servants, but from that hour, that house, those servants, and herself were his Then presenting a ring to Bassanio, she added that she gave them all with that ring

(b) Portia entreated her dear love to despatch the business

and be gone. She promised that he should have gold to pay the money twenty times over, before that kind friend should lose a hair by her Bassanio's fault. She assured him at the same time that as he was so dearly bought, she would dearly love him.

2 Convert the following into the Indirect form of speech —(C U 1907.)

My lords, I am old and weak, and at present unable to say more but my feelings were too strong to have said less. I could not have slept that night without giving this vent to my abhorrence of such preposterous principles.

Ans. Addressing the lords he said that he was old and weak, and at that time was unable to say more, but that his feelings had been too strong to have said less. He added that he could not have slept that night without giving that vent to his abhorrence of such preposterous principles.

3 Change the following passage into the Direct form of speech —(C U 1911)

The moon having risen, the leader of the band addressed his men, saying that the task before them was as dangerous as it was difficult, yet they would be mad to neglect the opportunity, at the worst, they could still die like brave men.

Ans. The moon having risen, the leader of the band said, "My men, the task before us is as dangerous as it is difficult, yet we will be mad to neglect the opportunity, at the worst, we can still die like brave men."

4 Change the following into Indirect narrative —

(C U. 1913)

"Comrades," he said, "listen to me, for though I often talk nonsense, I can talk sound sense when I choose. Fortune has sent us this treasure so that we may lead a life of ease, and we will spend it as lightly as we have

come by it Who could have guessed, when we set out to day that we should come by so fair a fortune ?”

Ans He asked his comrades to listen to him , for though he often talked nonsense, he could talk sound sense when he chose Fortune had sent them that treasure so that they might lead a life of ease, and they would spend that as lightly as they had' come by that He doubted if anybody could have guessed, when they had set out that day, that they would come by so fair a fortune

5 Change the following into **Indirect** narrative —

(C U 1914)

I am sure that I shall have the consent of all who are listening to me to-night, when I claim that we have done all that is possible for us to do to bring together the two parties in this dispute Do not hastily set down our efforts as useless Let us be patient , we have advanced far during the past few days

Ans He said that he was sure that he would have the consent of all who were listening to him that night, when he claimed that they had done all that was possible for them to do to bring together the two parties in that dispute He asked them not to hastily set down their efforts as useless, and advised them to be patient, saying that they had advanced far during the past few days

6 Change the following into **Indirect** narrative —

(C U 1915)

Then he said to his friend, “Give me your hand ! Fare you well Grieve not that I am fallen into this misfortune for you Commend me to your wife, and tell her how I have loved you !”

Ans Then he asked his friend to give him his hand and bade him farewell He asked him not to grieve that he was fallen into that misfortune for him He then requested

him to commend him to his wife and to tell her how he had loved him

7 Change the following into the indirect form of speech — (C U 1916)

“My dear friends,” said he, “we have come because we have a message to give you Long ago we heard of the tribe to which you belong, and long our hearts have wished to meet you”.

Ans Addressing them as his dear friends, he said that they had come because they had a message to give them They had heard of the tribe to which they belonged long before and their hearts had always wished to meet them

8 (i) He wished to know why we were late

(ii) They asked what he had done for his country

(iii) He asked where they were going

Read the above, and write down the questions originally asked (C U 1916)

Ans (i) Why are you late ?

or

Why are they late ?

(ii) What has he done for his country ?

or

What have you done for your country ?

(iii) Where are they going ?

or

Where are you going ?

9 Change the following into indirect narrative —

(C U 1917)

I can assure you that I should be slow to plead the mere title to retirement which long labour is supposed to earn But I have always watched, and worked according to what I felt to be the measure of my own mental force A monitor

from within tells me that though I may still be equal to some portions of my duties, there are others which I cannot face I fear therefore I must keep in view an issue which cannot be evaded

Ans He said that he could assure them that he should be slow to plead the mere title to retirement which long labour was supposed to earn But he had always watched, and worked according to what he had felt to be the measure of his own mental force, (and now) a monitor from within told him that though he might still be equal to some portions of his duties, there were others which he could not face He feared therefore that he should have to keep in view an issue which could not be evaded

10 Change the following into the indirect form of speech — (C U 1917)

I cannot help thinking you are bound north on the same business as myself—which is I confess to you honestly, to strike a blow for the king If you are on the same errand, I have two old relations who are staunch to the cause, and I am going to their house to remain until I can join the army, If you wish it, you shall come with me, and I will promise you kind treatment and safety while under their roof

Ans He said that he (the speaker) could not help thinking he was bound north on the same business as himself (the speaker)—which was, he (the speaker) confessed to him honestly, to strike a blow for the king * He continued saying that if he was on the same errand, he (the speaker) had two old relations who were staunch to the cause, and he (the speaker) was going to their house to remain until he could join the army He (the speaker) then proposed that he should go with him (the speaker) if he wished, and he (the speaker) would promise him kind treatment and safety while under their roof

CHAPTER XVIII

EXPRESSIONS 'LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED

I

✓ 1 **Able**—is said of strength or power in general, as—John is *able* to ride

Capable—is said of strength or power to do a particular thing, as—John is *capable* of riding seventy miles a day

2 **Abstain**—We ⁶abstain generally from a thing, as—I *abstained* from food for three days

Refrain—We refrain generally from an action, as—The boys *refrained* with difficulty from laughing. I *refrained* from anger.

✗ 3 **Access**=admittance, as—We had no *access* to the office-room

Excess=going beyond what is usual or proper, as—Don't play any musical instrument to *excess*

Accession—The battle took place immediately after his *accession* to the throne

✗ 4 **Adapt**=to suit, to make fit, as—We must *adapt* ourselves to our circumstances

Adept=a proficient, as—He is an *adept* in the art of healing

Adopt=to choose, to take up; as—I am at a loss to decide which course to *adopt*

5 **Admission**=entrance, not simply into a place, but also into a society or a class, as—We got *admission* into the office-room. The student got *admission* into the first class *Admission* into society is not possible even for the rich

Admittance=entrance, generally into a place, as—The students gained *admittance* into the house

6 **Admit**—is a more general term than *acknowledge* as—He *admitted* the justice of my objection

Acknowledge=to give intimation of the receipt of , as—I *acknowledged* the receipt of your letter.

Confess=to acknowledge fully something wrong , as—The accused *confessed* his guilt before the Magistrate

7 **Affect**=to act upon , to pretend , as—The famine did not *affect* the whole of Bengal Hamlet *affected* madness

Effect=result , as—There can be no *effect* without a cause

8 **Affected**=unnatural , as—He was talking in an *affected* tone

Affecting=moving, pathetic , as—His language was very *affecting*

9 **Allow**—To allow is to abstain from refusal , as—The students were *allowed* to talk with one another in the absence of the teacher

Permit—is stronger term than *allow* , to permit is to give a decided assent , as—I am *permitted* to appear in the examination as a non-collegiate student

10 **Allusion**=an indirect reference , as—There is an *allusion* to the Black-hole tragedy

Illusion=deceptive appearance as—At first the figure was considered to be an *illusion*

11 **Altar**=an elevated place of worship , as—The priests knelt down on the *altar* and offered sacrifices to the gods

Alter=to change as—There is no power in the tongue of man to *alter* my opinion

12 **Alteration**=change , as—Some *alterations* were made in the second edition of the book

Altercation=contention, as—There was a *sévere altercation* between the master and the servant

Alternation=the act of being by turns, as—Happiness and misery come in *alternation* with each other

✓ **13 Alternate**=being by turns, as—The barber comes here on *alternate* days

Alternative=one of the two courses between which there is a choice, as—A fine of Rs 300 was an *alternative* to imprisonment

14 Amiable=lovable, as—His look was not at all *amiable*

Amicable=friendly, as—The parties came to an *amicable* settlement

✓ **15 Ancient**—is opposed to *modern*, as—In very *ancient* times, there lived a king in India of the name of Dasaratha

Old—is opposed to *new*, as—Abandon not your *old* clothes till you get your new

16 Antic=odd, as—His dress and gestures were very *antic*

Antique=ancient, old-fashioned, as—The woman came across an *antique* gold coin

✓ **17 Apposite**=proper, as—His remarks are anything but *apposite*

Opposite=contrary, standing in front, as—We took the *opposite* side in the dispute We live in a house *opposite* to the college

18 Artist=one who practises one of the fine arts, such as painting, poetry, etc, as—The *artist* took pains with his picture

Artisan=one who practises some handicraft, such as

carpentry," masonry, etc , as—Chinese carpenters are good *artisans*

19 **Artistic**—This gentleman is at the top of the tree in *artistic* pursuits

Artful=clever cunning , as—All of his *artful* projects ended in smoke

Artificial=not natural , as—The walls were decorated with *artificial* flowers.

✓ 20 **Ascent**=going up , as—The *ascent* to the summit of a mountain is very difficult

Assent=to agree , as—I cannot *assent* to your terms

21 **Aspire**=to desire eagerly , as—There is no man that does not *aspire* after worldly greatness

Expire=to die , to come to an end , as—The old man *expired* on the 5th July My leave will *expire* on the 31st March

✓ 22 **Assay**=an attempt , as—He undertook many hard *assays*

Essay=a written composition , as—The teacher asked me to write an *essay* on "Honesty "

! / 23 **Astonish**—We are astonished at what is great or striking , as—They were *astonished* at the feats of the juggler.

Surprise—We are surprised at what is new or unexpected , as—I was *surprised* to find that there were no guns or pistols in the room where the Emperor slept

24 **Auger**=a boring instrument , as—The carpenter is making holes in the beam with an *auger*

Augur=a diviner , as—The *augur* predicted that the girl would be the mother of a king

25 **Aught**=anything , as—Have you *ought* to say against your brother ?

Ought=to be under obligation , as—We *ought* to obey the rules of the school

26 Authorial—He is fond of writing in an *authorial* style

Authoritative—He asked me to leave the place in an *authoritative* tone

27 Avenge—To *avenge* is to inflict just punishment for an injury or wrong done to ourselves or some one else , it does not imply any personal feeling of anger or malice , as—Future historians will *avenge* the wrongs done me by my contemporaries

Revenge—To *revenge* is to inflict punishment for an injury or wrong done to ourselves , it always implies a personal feeling of anger , as—He *revenged* himself on his enemy by putting his son to death

28 Bail=security given , as—The accused was released on *bail*

Bale=a bundle of goods , as—He was charged with cheating in respect of four *bales* of cotton

29 Barbarism=uncivilised condition , as—People in *barbarism* do not know how to make life comfortable

Barbarity=cruelty , as—Shylock was hated by all good men for his acts of *barbarity*

30 Bare=(1) uncovered , (2) to uncover , as—(1) He never goes out with his head *bare*. (2) The wolf *bared* its teeth in a snarl of fury

Bear=(1) a kind of animal , (2) to endure , as—(1) The *bear* does not touch the dead body of a man. (2) I was not prepared to *bear* such a heavy loss

✓ **31. Battle**—is a contest between opposing armies , as—Ibrahim Lodi was totally defeated in the first *battle* of Panipat

War—is a contest, more prolonged than battle, between opposing armies, as—England declared *war* against Germany.

Fight—is a combat between a small number of persons, as—Many were wounded in the *fight* between the students and the merchants

32 Beach=(1) the shore of the sea, (2) to draw up and leave on the beach, as—(1) They were walking along the *beach* side by side. (2) After every voyage, the ships are *beached* for repair

Beech=a kind of tree, as—There is a row of *beech* trees in front of my house

33 Beneficial=advantageous, as—Education is *beneficial* only when it is not abused

Beneficent=kind, as—People cannot but be loyal to a *beneficent* king

34 Berth=a sleeping place in a train or on board a ship, as—One of the lower *berths* has been reserved by Mr Robert

Birth=coming into life, as—*Birth* is sure to be followed by death

35 Blunder=a gross or serious mistake, as—Being inexperienced and unenlightened in the science of government, they made many lamentable *blunders*

Mistake=the taking of one thing or person for another, as—He committed three *mistakes* in his answer

Error=a departure from what is right, as—There are many grammatical *errors* in the composition of the boy

36 Bridal=marriage, nuptial, as—The *bridal* ceremony of my brother was celebrated on the 5th June

Bridle=an instrument by which a horse is controlled as—He took the *bridle* in his hand and rode on merrily

✓ 37. **Canon**=rule, as—Downright contradiction is a violation of one of the *canons* of good society.

Cannon=great guns used in war, as—Suddenly the loud report of *cannon* startled the weary soldiers

38 **Canvas**=a kind of coarse cloth, as—Shoes made of *canvas* are not durable

Canvass=to solicit votes, contributions, etc, as—He went from door to door to *canvass* for votes

39 **Casual**=accidental or occasional, as—I enjoyed *casual* leave for a week

Causal=relating to or denoting cause, as—There is no *causal* connection between day and night

40 **Cautionary**—He gave me a *cautionary* advice in time

Cautious—We should be *cautious* of giving offence to others.

✓ 41 **Ceiling**=the inner roof, as—Only the *ceiling* of the house will be white-washed

‘ **Roof**=the whole covering of a house, as—The mason was working on the *roof* of the house.

✓ **Sealing**=the act of setting a seal to, as—The clerk was engaged in *sealing* the letters

42 **Ceremonial**=relating to ceremony, as—True religion does not consist in the observance of *ceremonial* duties only

Ceremonious=particular in observing forms, as—Old men are generally very *ceremonious*

43 **Cession**=a yielding up, as—The *cession* of the part of the kingdom was demanded by France

Session=the time when a court or public body sits as—Students are usually admitted at the beginning of a *session*

✓ 44 **Change**=to substitute one thing for another, as—People were averse to *change* of Governments

Alter=to make some difference in a thing, as—The teachers requested the Head Master to *alter* the routine

✓ 45 **Check**=to restrain, to examine an account etc, as—*Check* the speed of the horse The auditor *checked* the account

Cheque=a money order on a banker, as—I gave him a *cheque* on the Bank of Bengal for the amount

✓ 46 **Childish**—is generally used in a bad sense and means 'silly,' 'trifling', as—Instead of wasting time in *childish* amusements, he consecrated his days and nights to study

✓ **Child-like**—is used in a good sense and means 'innocent', 'simple', as—His *child-like* simplicity charmed all who came in close touch with him

47 **Choir**=a chorus or band of singers, as—The prayer-song was sung by a *choir*

Coir=the fibre of the husk of the cocoanut, as—Door-mats are usually made of *coir*

Quire=a collection of paper consisting of twenty four sheets, as—His paper sells at two annas a quire

48 **Choler**=anger, as—His cutting remarks excited my *choler*

Collar=something worn about the neck, as—An English man never wears a coat without a *collar*

49 **Cite**=to quote, as—The speaker *cited* several lines from Shakespeare

Site=a place chosen for any particular purpose, as—The *site* for the school building has been selected by the Inspector of Schools

Sight=view, as—The crest of the temple is in *sight*

50 Collision—state of being struck together, as—There was a *collision* between a tram car and a private carriage

Collusion—a secret agreement to deceive, as—The thief was in *collusion* with the servant

✓ **51. Comparison**—denotes likeness in the quality and *difference* in the degree, as—A *comparison* is made between Shakespeare and Kalidas

Contrast—denotes *difference* in the quality and *likeness* in the degree, as—There is a great *contrast* between the character of Akbar and that of Aurangzeb

52 Complement—that which completes, as—This word is a subjective *complement* to the verb

Compliment—an expression of regard, as—Tender my best *compliments* to your parents

53 Comprehensive—I spared no pains to make the book as *comprehensive* (extensive) as possible.

Comprehensible—What he said was not at all *comprehensible* (capable of being understood).

54 Compulsion—We are compelled to do a thing against our will, as—People paid the unjust tax under *compulsion*

Obligation—We are obliged to do a thing as a duty, as—I am under *obligation* to your father for the trouble he took for me

55 Condemn—to pronounce to be wrong, as—The conduct of the officer was *condemned* by all

Contemn—to despise, as—Little things should not be *contemned*

† **56 Confident**—having confidence as—I am *confident* of success

Confidant—one who is entrusted with secrets, as—My *confidant* is not the man to betray my secrets.

57 Conscious—aware, as—He was *conscious* of his boundless power.

Conscientious—scrupulous, as—The head of a department is expected to be more *conscientious* than his subordinates

58. Considerate—thoughtful for the feelings of others? as—A *considerate* man always looks to the comfort of others

Considerable—moderately large, as—He spent a *considerable* sum of money for the education of his children

59 Contagious—A contagious disease is caught by contact, as—Small-pox is a *contagious* disease

Infectious—An infectious disease is that which is caused generally by the agency of air or water, as—Malaria is an *infectious* disease

60 Contemptible—is applied to that which is the object of contempt, as—He is a *contemptible* fellow who sells honour for money

Contemptuous—is applied to that which indicates contempt, as—This is a *contemptuous* remark.

61 Contented—A man is *contented* when he does not want more, as—A truly happy man remains *contented* with his own lot

Satisfied—A man is *satisfied* when he has obtained all that he wishes, as—The people of the country were *satisfied* when the tax was abated

62 Continuance—The nobles tried their best for the *continuance* of monarchy

Continuation—This was written in *continuation* of his last letter

Continuity—The *continuity* of his service will depend on his father's recovery

63 Continuous—is that which is not interrupted so

long as it lasts , as—The shout reverberated along the streets in one *continuous* roar

Continual—is that which is constantly renewed, though interrupted , as—There was a heavy and *continual* shower of rain in Calcutta during the last week

Contiguous=touching, adjoining , as—Chittagong is *contiguous* to Tipperah

64. **Cool**—denotes absence of warmth , as—The shade of the banyan tree is very *cool*

Cold—is opposed to *warm* as—*Cold* water does not agree with my constitution

65. **Cord**=a small rope , as—Do not pull the bell *cord* to start the car

Chord=a straight line joining any two points in the curve of a circle ; as—The diameter is the largest of all the *chords* of a circle.

66. **Core**=the inner part of anything ; as—His cutting remarks touched the very *core* of my heart.

Corps=a division of an army , as—A fine *corps* of troops was sent from India

Corpse=the dead body of a human being , as—Two animals are fighting over a *corpse*

67. **Corporal**=pertaining to the body , as—Teachers are requested not to inflict *corporal* punishment on any student of the school

Corporeal=having a body , as—To Wordsworth the cuckoo was not a *corporeal* being, but only a wandering voice ,

68. **Council**=an assembly , as—This gentleman is a member of the Legislative *council*

Counsel=(1) a barrister , (2) advice , as—*Counsel* attached much importance to his arguments. He bore his mother's *counsel* in mind.

69 Course=the direction pursued , as—The boy took a wrong *course* after the death of his father

Coarse=rough , as—*Coarse* rice is cheaper than fine rice

70 Credible=that may be believed , as—The words of a thief are not *credible*

Creditable=worthy of praise , as—His success in the examination is not *creditable*

Credulous=apt to believe without sufficient evidence as—Women are generally very *credulous*

71 Crime—We commit *crime* against the laws of a country , as—Begging is a *crime* in England

Vice—We commit *vice* against the laws of morality , as—Addiction to drinking is a *vice*

Sin—We commit *sin* against the laws of religion , as—To abandon poor old parents to their fate is a *sin*

72 Dearth=scarcity , as—People suffered much on account of the *dearth* of water.

Dearness=high price , as—The present *dearness* of rice is due to failure of rain in autumn last

73 Defend—We defend a person or thing from a present danger , as—The French *defended* the fort by means of guns

Protect—We protect a person or thing from an approaching danger , as—India is naturally *protected* by seas and mountains

74 Deference=regard , as—With all *deference* to your judgment, I beg to say this

Difference=dissimilarity , as—There is a great *difference* between these two books

75 Defy=to challenge , as—There is none to *defy* his authority

Deify=to worship as a deity ; as—The teacher was *deified* by his pupils.

76. Delightful—refers both to the pleasures of the mind and to those of the senses except *taste* , as—We had a *delightful* conversation

Delicious—refers to the pleasure of the senses only, particularly *taste* and *smell* , as—This is a very *delicious* fruit

77 Dependence=reliance , as—*Dependence* on God and on one's self is a sure way to success

Dependency=a colony , as—England is ever ready to protect her *dependencies*.

78 Dependent=relying on , as—He was *dependent* for his support upon the energies of his own mind

Dependant=subordinate , as—We should not abandon our poor *dependants* to their fate

79. Deny—We deny the truth of a statement , as—The creditor *denied* having received any payment from the debtor

Refuse—We refuse a thing or to do something , as—I could not but *refuse* the present The boys *refused* to leave the place

80 Depository=storehouse , as—The book was not found in the *depository*

Depository=a person with whom anything is deposited , trustee , as—The woman left the gold ornaments with her nephew as *depository*

81 Deprecate=to desire earnestly the removal of as —There is none that does not *deprecate* tyranny

Depreciate=to undervalue , as—A good master does not *depreciate* the merit of his servants

82 Descent=(1) derivation , (2) fall , as—(1) His *descent* from a noble family was taken into consideration (2) *Descent* to Hell is easy

Dissent=to differ , as—There are many who will *dissent* from this opinion

83 Descry=to discover by the eye , as—It was the mother who *descried* the foot-prints of Lucy

Decry=to under rate , as—We should not *decry* the real merit of a person

84 Desert=reward or punishment deserved , as—I am sure he will meet with his *desert*

Dessert=fruits, sweetmeats, etc served at the close of an entertainment , as—These dishes are generally used for *dessert*.

85 Destination=goal , as—We shall reach our *destination* within a week

Destiny=fate , as—There is none that can stand against *destiny*

86 Dilligence—denotes earnest application to some special object for some time ; as—His brilliant success was entirely due to his *dilligence*

Industry—denotes habitual devotion to labour , as—*Industry* is the mother of good fortune

87 Disbelief=positive denial of truth, as—His *disbelief* in the existence of God is only a foolish obstinacy

Unbelief=absence of belief , as—His *unbelief* in the existence of God is due to ignorance

88. Discomfort=to make uneasy , uneasiness of body or mind , as—The bad news *discomforted* me It is a source of positive *discomfort*

Discomfit=to throw into perplexity and dejection , as—The general was quite *discomfited* by the sudden attack of the enemy

89 Discover—We discover that which existed before, but was unknown , as—Columbus *discovered* America

Invent—We invent that which did not exist before , as—Galileo *invented* the telescope

90. Disease = a malady, as—He has been suffering from a fatal *disease*

Decease = death; as—The marriage was postponed on account of the sudden *decease* of the brother of the bride.

✓ 91. Diseased = affected with disease, as—He was wide awake to the wants of his *diseased* father

✓ Deceased = dead, as—The children of the *deceased* identified the murderer of their father.

92. Divers = several, as—*Divers* weighty reasons combined to influence his decision (The word is archaic except in a facetious sense)

Diverse = different in character; as—An administrator has to deal with men of *diverse* types

✓ 93. Doubt = to hesitate between belief and disbelief, as—A virtuous man never *doubts* the existence of God

Suspect = to imagine to be guilty, as—The merchant *suspected* that the servant had stolen some jewels and money from the iron-safe.

✓ 94. Draft = a rough sketch, as—The Head master looked over the *draft* of the letter.

✓ Draught = (1) the quantity drunk at a time, (2) a current of air, as—(1) I drank a *draught* of water (2) Do not sit in the *draught* or you will catch cold.

✓ Drought (drowt) = want of rain; as—Owing to the *drought* the crops have failed.

✓ 95. Drown—is used only of animate objects, as—The boy was *drowned* in the river

Sink—is used of both animate and inanimate objects, as—Two vessels *sank* in the Bay of Bengal.

✓ 96. Dying = ceasing to exist, as—He remembered this to his *dying* day.

Dyeing=colouring , as—She was an expert in the art of *dyeing* feet

97. Efface=to blot out , as—He tried his best to *efface* the stain on his character

Deface=to disfigure , as—Postage stamps should not be *defaced*

98 Effective, effectual, efficacious=having power to produce the desired effect , as—This medicine is very *effective* in its working *Effectual* sanitary measures should be taken as early as possible The measures taken by government were *efficacious* in stamping out discontent

99 Ejection—The tenant became liable to *ejection* for non-payment of rents

Ejection—The *ejection* of the gentleman from the hall was due to his unpleasant remarks

100 Elemental=pertaining to elements , as—The vessel could not bear the brunt of *elemental* fury

Elementary=rudimentary , as—He wrote an *elementary* Sanskrit Grammar

101 Elicit=to draw out , as—Neither threat nor torture *elicited* any confession from the accused

Illicit=unlawful , as—The accused was charged with *illicit* possession and sale of opium

102 Eligible=fit to be chosen , as—He is not *eligible* for the post

Illegible=that cannot be read , indistinct , as—He writes a very *illegible* hand

103. Elusive—His language was quite *elusive* **Illusive**—The light he was following was *illusive* **Illusory**—Meghanad defeated Lakshmana in an *illusory* warfare

104 Emerge=to issue or come out of , as—A tiger was seen to *emerge* from the wood

Immerge=to plunge into, as—The girl *immersed* her hand in the acid

105. **Emigrant**=one who leaves one's own country and goes to live in another, as—All the *emigrants* from France settled down in England

Immigrant=one who comes into one country from another in order to live there, as—In England the *immigrants* can enjoy the same rights and privileges as the English people

✓ 106 **Eminent**=distinguished, as—He was an *eminent* scholar.

Imminent=impending, as—The gentleman is in *imminent* danger

✓ 107 **Enough**—denotes a greater quantity than *sufficient*, we use *enough* when we have what we wish to have, as—An income of three thousand rupees is not *enough* for a covetous man

Sufficient—we have sufficient quantity when our wants are supplied, although, it may or may not satisfy our desires, as—An income of three hundred rupees is *sufficient* for a gentleman

108 **Envious**=feeling envy, as—We should not be *envious* of the prosperity of others

Enviably=that is to be envied, desirable, as—The post he holds is not an *enviable* one

✓ 109 **Eruption**=a bursting out, as—Several villages were destroyed by an *eruption* of the volcano

Irruption=sudden invasion, as—The *irruption* of Nadir Shah is a notable event in the History of India

110 **Esteem**=regard, as—The teacher was held in high *esteem* by his pupils

Estimate=calculate, as—The cost of the building was *estimated* at Rs 15,000

Estimation=opinion, as—His enemies tried to lower him in the *estimation* of others

111 **Exceptional**=rare, unusual, as—Fines are remitted in *exceptional* cases

Exceptionable=objectionable, as—Those lines that were considered as *exceptionable* were omitted

✓ 112 **Excursion**=a pleasure trip, as—One day the king went out on a hunting *excursion*

Incursion=a sudden invasion, as—Sultan Mahmud made seventeen *incursions* into India

✓ 113 **Excuse**—is used with reference to trifling offences, as—Kindly *excuse* my absence for this day

Pardon—is used with reference to serious offences, as—The king *pardoned* the murderer who had been sentenced to death

Forgive—is used with reference to offences done to our selves, as—The quarrel came to an end as soon as I implored him to *forgive* and forget

114 **Expedient**=advisable, as—It will not be *expedient* for your son to appear in the examination this year

Expeditious=characterised by rapidity, quick, as—An *expeditious* carpenter will not take more than three hours to finish this

✓ 115 **Expenditure**—is generally used to mean "act of spending," as—He can regulate the *expenditure* of his household as he regulates the finances of the empire

Expense—is generally used to mean "that which is spent", as—My father is too poor to defray the *expenses* of my education

116 **Exposure**—*Exposure* to cold was the cause of his fever.

Exposition—This is a wrong *exposition* of the doctrine

117 Faint=indistinct, to swoon, as—The impression of the right foot was very *faint* The woman *fainted* when she heard of her son's death

Feint=a pretence, as—His smile is merely a *feint* to throw a person off his guard

✓ 118 Falsehood—A falsehood may or may not be uttered with the intention of deceiving others, as—Want of punctuality is a species of *falsehood*

Lie—A lie is an intentional violation of truth uttered to deceive others It is a more offensive term than *falsehood*, as—The boy was punished by his father for telling a *lie*

Falseness=faithlessness, as—The fall of the empire was due to the *falseness* of the ministers.

Falsity=quality of being false, as—His acquittal or conviction depends entirely on the truth or *falsity* of her statement

✓ 119 Famous—is always used in a good sense, as—Puri is *famous* for the temple of Jagannath.

Illustrious=distinguished It is always used in a good sense; as—The portrait was the gift of one of the most *illustrious* sons of Bengal

Notable—is used for a person or thing worthy of note, as—Panipat is a *notable* place in the History of India

Noted—is used either in a good sense or in a bad sense, as—The horse is *noted* for its beauty, speed and strength. He is *noted* for picking the pockets of others

Notorious—is used of persons of evil reputation, as—The robber was *notorious* for his evil deeds

120. Fatal=deadly, as—The physicians considered the wound to be *fatal*

Fatalist=one who believes that everything depends on fate, as—Napoleon was a strong *fatalist*.

Fateful=producing important events, as—It was a *fateful* excursion

121 Felicity=happiness, as—It is only the virtuous that can enjoy true *felicity*

Facility=(1) ease, (2) opportunity, as—(1) He writes English with *facility* - (2) The Government gave Sir J G Bose every *facility* for carrying on his research-work

122. Formalism—*Formalism* is the crust of religion

Formality—You need not observe *formalities* in my house

123 Funeral=pertaining to a burial, as—Several gentlemen attended the *funeral* ceremony of his father

Funereal=dismal, as—The deserted house presented a *funereal* aspect to the new comers

124. Gamble=to play for money; as—He goes out every night to *gamble*

Gambol=to dance about in sport, as—The girl was *gambolling* at the sight of her mother

✓ **125 General**—is used with reference to the greater part or number of anything, as—A famous poet is *generally* respected

Universal—is used with reference to the whole of anything, as—A virtuous man is *universally* respected

126 Genteel=graceful in manners or in form, as—Lucy had a *genteel* appearance

Gentle=well-born, mild, as—Rich and poor, *gentle* and simple are all subject to death The cow is *gentle* animal

127. Get up—I *get up* early in the morning

Get-up=general appearance, as—The *get up* of the book is excellent

128 Ghastly=shocking, pale, as—Her face looked *ghastly* and her hands were cold

Ghostly=pertaining to apparitions, as—Hamlet followed the *ghostly* figure of his father.

129. **Gladder**=more glad, as—Nothing could make him feel *gladder*

Gladlier=more delightful, as—A *gladlier* spectacle than this I have never witnessed before

✓ 130 **Godlike**=like God, as—Ramkrishna was a *godlike* man

Godly=pious; as—He led a *godly* life

131. **Gracious**=merciful; as—May God save our *gracious* king

Graceful=agreeable, as—The appearance of the girl was very *graceful*

✓ 132 **Habit**—is generally used with reference to an individual person, as—He has acquired the nasty *habit* of smoking

Custom—is generally used with reference to a group of persons, as—There were many cruel *customs* among the Hindus

Costume=dress, as—The gentleman was dressed in decent European *costume*.

✓ 133 **Haste**—denotes quickness of action, as—I was in *haste* to go home

✓ **Hurry**—denotes not only quickness of action but also a confusion of the mind, as—We were in a *hurry* to leave the place before dawn

✓ 134 **Hear**—is used only of hearing in a physical sense; as—I did not *hear* what he was saying

Listen—is used to denote *attention* on the part of the listener, as—I *listened* to his speech with delight

135 **Hoard**=a treasure, to amass, as—The servant came by a *hoard* of gold and silver coins. Shylock *hoarded*

a large sum of money by lending money to Christian merchants

Horde=a gang, as—The Calcutta police cleverly arrested a *horde* of pirates

136 Honorary=holding office without receiving any emuneration, as—The accused will be tried by an *Honorary* Magistrate.

Honourable=worthy of honour, as—The profession of a teacher is very *honourable*

137 Hope—We hope for that which is welcome, as—I *hope* you will kindly grant me leave of absence for a week

Expect—We expect that which is certain, whether it is welcome or not, as—Everybody *expects* rain in June and July

138 Human=pertaining to mankind, as—He did 'never' yield to *human* weaknesses

Humane=kind, as—Cruelty to animals is abhorrent to a *humane* man.

139 Humiliation=abasement, as—"He had to drink the cup of *humiliation* to the dregs"

Humility=modesty, as—The easiest way to dignity is *humility*

140 Ice—Water is converted into ice by freezing, as—The price of *ice* has gone up

Snow—Aqueous vapour is condensed and falls on the earth as snow, as—The summits of the mountains were white with *snow*

141 Idle—A man who is capable of activity, but prefers to do nothing is called *idle*, as—"Alnaschar was a very *idle* fellow, who never would set his hand to any business during his father's life"

Lazy—A lazy man has a peculiar dislike to work, this

is a more contemptuous term than *idle*, as—He is too *lazy* to take the trouble of writing a letter to his mother

142 **Imaginary**=existing only in the imagination, as—A wise man never suffers from *imaginary* evils

Imaginative=full of imagination, as—The poet's mind is highly *imaginative*

143 **Imperial**=pertaining to an empire or emperor, as—He was a pattern to the young princes of the *imperial* family

Imperious=authoritative, as—He is submissive to the strong and *imperious* to the weak (নবমের বাঘ)

144. **Indigent**=poor, as—We should loose our purse-strings in aid of the *indigent*

Indigenous=produced in a country, as—We should buy *indigenous* articles as far as practicable

145 **Industrial**=relating to industry; as—There will be an *industrial* exhibition at Chittagong

Industrious=laborious, as—*Industrious* boys are sure to achieve success

146 **Informant**=one who supplies some information, it is used in a good sense; as—The *informant* was liberally rewarded by the father of the new-born child

Informer=one who acts as a spy, it is used in a bad sense, as—The police did not like to mention the name of the *informer*

147 **Ingenuous**=frank, as—She was so *ingenuous* that a secret was a burden to her

Ingenious=skilful, witty, as—Her reply was very *ingenious*

148 **Innocent**=blameless, as—An *innocent* man should not be punished for a fault committed by others

Innocuous=harmless in effects, as—The hermit gave her an *innocuous* drug

149 Jealous=apprehensive on account of, or through fear of, another's superiority to ourselves, as—The co-wives were *jealous* of one another

Zealous=full of zeal; as—He was a *zealous* worker in the cause of education

150 Judicial=pertaining to a judge or court of justice, as—On no occasion was he found to have abused his *judicial* power

Judicious=prudent, wise, as—His selection of books was a *judicious* one

151 Junction=place of union, as—An accident took place at the *junction* of College Street and Harrison Road.

Juncture=a critical point of time, as—Unhappily just at this *juncture*, my brother lost his post

152 Kill—is a general term and means "to put to death", as—Four thousand soldiers were *killed* in the battle

Murder—is "the act of putting a person to death intentionally", as—They *murdered* the merchant for his purse

Assassinate=to "murder by surprise or secret assault"; as—On his way to Mecca, he was *assassinated* by an old enemy.

153 Liberty=implies previous restraint, as—The prisoner was set at *liberty* after a protracted trial

Freedom=implies absence of restraint at the present moment, as—Birds of the air enjoy *freedom* more than men

154 Lightning=the electric flash usually followed by thunder, as—The news spread like *lightning* among the people

Lightening=making less heavy, as—The accused appealed to the High Court for the *lightening* of the sentence

✓ 155 **Limit**=boundary, as—There is no *limit* to one's ambition

✓ **Limitation**=restriction, as—As regards the admission of boys, there is no *limitation* of age

156. **Loan**=anything lent, as—I asked him for a *loan* of Rs 300

Lone=solitary (used in poetry), as—I found him a *lone* player in the arena

157 **Loath**=unwilling, as—I am *loath* to accompany him

Loathe=to dislike greatly, as—I *loathe* too much familiarity

✗ 158 **Lovable**=worthy of love, as—We should make ourselves *lovable* before we expect to be loved by others

✓ **Lovely**=beautiful, as—The rose is a lovely flower.

✓ 159 **Luxuriant**=rich in growth, as—This tree has a *luxuriant* growth

Luxurious=given to luxury, as—His *luxurious* habits were the chief cause of his ruin

✓ 160 **Memorable**—Nobody can easily forget the incident that took place on that *memorable* date.

✓ **Memorial**—The Landholders' Association submitted a *memorial* to the Viceroy

161 **Mendacity**=a tendency to lying, as—You will never prosper unless you give up *mendacity*

Mendicity=the state of being a beggar, as—The outlaw took to *mendicity* to avoid detection by the police

162 **Metal**—Iron is a very useful *metal*

Mettle=spirit, as—The cry of wolves behind put the horse on his *mettle*

✓ 163 **Momentary**=lasting for a short time, as—We

should not lose our honour and dignity for the sake of a *momentary* pleasure

✓ **Momentous**=important, as—The speaker dwelt upon the *momentous* nature of the subject

164 **Monetary**=relating to money, as—He acted always from *monetary* motives

✓ **Monitory**=giving admonition or warning, as—Kutub-uddin neglected the *monitory* warnings of his father

165 **Naughty**=wicked, as—A *naughty* boy does not mind his lessons

Knotty=containing knots, difficult, as—This is a *knotty* question indeed

✓ 166 **Necessity**—is used when something is indispensably necessary, as—They were under the *necessity* of killing their horses for food to save themselves from starvation

✓ **Need**—We are in need when we are in a temporary difficulty, as—I am in *need* of some money and wish to borrow

✓ 167 **Negligent**=careless from habits, as—A *negligent* student can hardly pass an examination

✓ **Neglectful**=one who neglects his duties intentionally, as—A *neglectful* servant ought to be dismissed at once

✓ 168 **News**=first information of something that has just happened, as—The *news* of the unexpected victories spread with electric speed through the country

✓ **Tidings**=news that we are anxious to learn, as—A man was immediately despatched to bring him *tidings* of his mother

✓ 169 **Observance**=attentive performance, as—*Observance* of religious ceremonies tends to happiness

Observation=notice, remark; as—His practical knowledge soon rendered him an object of general *observation*
Your *observation* was not to the point

170 **Official**=pertaining to an office, as—Keep the *official* letters separate All the officers and *officials* stood before the king with folded hands

Officious=too forward in offering services, as—This *officious* fellow needs some one to set him right

✓ 171 **Order**—denotes less authority and formality than *command*, as—He *ordered* his servants to remove the articles from the house

✓ **Command**—denotes more authority than *order*, as—By the *command* of the General, the whole army was instantly on the move

172 **Ordinance**=a rule, a law, as—A loyal subject seldom violates the *ordinance* of his country

Ordinance=cannon, as—*Ordinance* were fired at the enemies

✗ 173 **Part**—is a general term, as—The first *part* of the journey was performed in company with a friend

Portion—is a part detached from the whole for a special purpose, as—One *portion* of the building was set apart for the Common room

✓ 174 **People**=persons generally, as—*People* are afraid to call at his house

A People=a nation, as—It is only a tyrant who can rob a *people* of its substance

The People=the popular classes, as—It was purely a war of self-defence on the part of the *people*

✓ 175 **Patrimony**=a right of estate inherited from one's ancestors, as—Hamlet was deprived of his *patrimony* by his uncle

Matrimony=marriage, as—Bassanio wished to enrich himself by *matrimony*

✓ 176 **Persecute**=to harass, as—Debtors are very often *persecuted* by their creditors

Prosecute=to bring before a court, as—He was *prosecuted* on a charge of theft.

177 Physic=a medicine, as—The *physic* failed to produce the desired effect

Physique=the natural constitution of a person, as—The *physique* of a soldier ought to be very strong

178 Piteous=fitted to excite pity, as—Her *piteous* cry attracted the notice of her neighbours

Pitiable=deserving pity, as—He was moved to tears at the *pitiable* condition of the people

Pitiful=full of that which excites pity, as—The king was moved at the *pitiful* look of the deer

179 Popular=pleasing to the people, as—The king was very *popular* with his subjects

Populous=full of people, as—Calcutta is the most *populous* of all the towns in India

180 Practice—is that which people may be in the habit of doing, as—Underhand *practices* fail in the end

Practise=to follow a profession, as—Dr Chatterjee *practises* in Calcutta

181 Practical—is opposed to *theoretical*, as—His *practical* knowledge soon rendered him an object of general observation He was fond of *practical* jokes

Practicable=feasible, that which can be done, as—The plan you suggested was not *practicable*

182 Precede=to go before, as—A verbal noun must be *preceded* by the definite article

Proceed=to go on, as—My brother *proceeded* to Bombay accompanied by a friend

183 Precedent=a parallel case in the past; as—The pleader quoted *precedents* in law

President=one who presides over a meeting, as—The *president* delivered his speech in Bengal

184 **Precipitate**=very hasty, as—The army had to take recourse to a *precipitate* flight

Precipitous=very steep, as—I cast my eyes towards the summit of a *precipitous* hill

✓ 185 **Prescribe**=to lay down authoritatively for direction, as—These books have been *prescribed* by the Calcutta University

Proscribe=to prohibit, as—All the seditious books have been *proscribed* by the Government of India

186 **Prescription**=a written direction for the preparation of a medicine, as—The *prescription* was given by an efficient doctor

Proscription=the act of proscribing, as—An indiscriminate *proscription* of books is not desirable

187 **Presumptive**=based on presumption or probability, as—The accused was punished on *presumptive* evidence.

Presumptuous=arrogant, as—It is *presumptuous* on his part to criticise the action of the government

✓ 188 **Principal**=highest in rank, character or importance, the head of an institution, as—All the *principal* men of Lahore were present there The *principal* of the Presidency College delivered a lecture on philosophy.

✓ **Principle**=a settled rule of action, as—A man who constantly changes his *principle* can never prosper

✓ 189 **Procedure**—The usual *procedure* is that the secretary should be elected by votes

Proceeding—They took no part in the *proceedings* of the conference

190 **Proportional**—In tea, sugar, milk and water should be adequately *proportional* one to the other.

Proportionate—The punishment was not *proportionate* to the gravity of his offence.

✓ **191 Rare**—A thing is rare when only a few of its kind are always found, as—Diamond is a *rare* gem

Scarce—A thing is scarce when it is not found in abundance for the time being, as—Drinking water has been *scarce* here for want of rain

192 Reclaim—to reform, as—There is very little hope of their being *reclaimed*

Re-claim=to claim again, as—The plaintiff *re-claimed* the house on a different ground

✗ **193 Recover**=to regain health, as—My brother has not yet *recovered* from his illness

Re-cover=to cover again, as—He has *re-covered* the roof of his house with *corrugated* iron

✗ **194 Register**=a written record, as—The name of the boy was not entered in the *register* by mistake

Registrar=one who keeps an official record, as—I made an application to the *Registrar* of the Calcutta University.

✓ **195 Rejoin**=to answer to a reply, as—She *rejoined* that it was the wish of her husband

✓ **Re-join**=to join again, as—I wish to *re-join* my post *ere long*

✗ **196 Respectful**=full of respect, as—We should be *respectful* to our superiors

Respectable=worthy of respect, as—He comes of a *respectable* family

Respective=relating to a particular person or thing, as—The boys hastened to their *respective* classes

197 Reverend=worthy of reverence, as—At this point he *reverend* gentleman became singularly incoherent

Reverent=expressing reverence, as—We ought to be *reverent* towards our superiors

✓ 198. **Righteous**=just, as—England is fighting for a *righteous* cause

Riotous=tumultuous, as—The police succeeded in dispersing the *riotous* mob

✓ 199. **Rob**—We rob a person of a thing by force, as—The poor widow was *robbed* of her all by her brother-in-law

Steal—We steal a thing secretly, as—The man entered my room in my absence and *stole* a gold watch.

200. **Rout**=the defeat of an army, as—It was the English who put the French to *rout*

Route=course followed in a journey, as—The *route* will be decorated with flags and flowers

✓ 201. **Safety**=the state of being free from danger, as—In times of danger every one seeks *safety* for himself

Security=sense of feeling safe, as—*Security* is mortal's chiefest enemy

202. **Sailor**=a seaman, as—He became a *sailor* at the age of twelve

Sailer=a boat or ship, as—The sunken vessel was a fast *sailer*

203. **Salubrious**=healthy, as—He went to recover health to the *salubrious* climate of Deoghar

Salutary=producing good effects, as—The minister carried out various *salutary* measures of reform

204. **Sanguine**=hopeful, as—Young men are generally very *sanguine* in their expectations

Sanguinary=attended with much bloodshed, as—Napoleon had to fight many *sanguinary* battles

205. **Sanitary**=pertaining to health, as—The *sanitary* condition of the town is very bad

Sanatory=conducive to health , as—*Sanatory* measures should be taken as early as possible.

✓ 206 **Say**—governs the direct object only , as—He *said this* to me

Tell—governs both the direct and the indirect object , as—He *told* me everything. When the indirect object is placed after the direct object, "tell" governs only the direct object , as—He *told* everything to me But in the sense of "inform" or "command," "tell" governs only the indirect object , as, He *told* me to see him at 10 o'clock

✓ 207 **Seek**—We seek what is absent or hidden , as—Tired of inactivity, he proceeded to Calcutta to *seek* employment

✓ **Search**=to look for or into a thing , as—The police *searched* six houses at Shambazar

208 **Senseless**=unconscious , unreasonable , as—The boy fell down from the tree and lay *senseless* for more than two hours A *senseless* man cannot distinguish right from wrong

Meaningless=without signification , as—The few lines he wrote were altogether *meaningless*

209 **Sensible**—is always used in a good sense and means "intelligent," "judicious," "reasonable" and "aware", as—No *sensible* man would do that He is fully *sensible* of the peril of his position

Sensitive—is one who is easily affected , as—He is too *sensitive* to abuse and calumny

210. **Sensual**—is that which appeals to the lower senses , it is always used in a bad sense , as—He loved neither ease nor *sensual* pleasure

Sensuous=pertaining to the senses , it is used in a good sense , as—Music is a *sensuous* art

Sensational=exciting , as—This is a *sensational* story

~~X~~ 211 **Sick**—denotes a temporary state of the body , as—
We are liable to be *sick* at any moment -

✓ **Sickly**—denotes a permanent state of the body , as—The children of my friend are very *sickly*

✓ 212 **Signification**=meaning , as—This sentence has no *signification* at all

Significance=important meaning , as—Their words were full of *significance*

✓ 213 **Since**—As a preposition *since* is followed by a noun denoting *point of time* and is preceded by a verb in the Present Perfect tense Moreover, it is used only with reference to *past* time and can never be used for *present* or *future* time , as—I have been suffering from fever *since* Monday last. My brother has been ill *since* the second February

✓ **From**—With reference to *past* time *from* is generally used to denote a *point of time* in cases where the time when the action ends is also specified , unlike *since*, it is preceded by a verb in any tense and can be used with reference to *past*, *present* and *future* time , as—He was absent *from* Monday to Saturday. I shall go to school *from* to-morrow

✓ 214 **Social**=pertaining to society , as—In a village we are bound more by *social* laws than by political ones

Sociable=fit for company , as—A *sociable* man can hardly enjoy the pleasures of solitude

215 **Spacious**=wide , as—The *spacious* room was tastefully decorated

Specious—is what apparently, but not really, looks well , as—His arguments are very *specious*

✓ 216 **Spiritual**=pertaining to divine things , as—A wise man aspires after *spiritual* blessings

Spirituos=containing spirit , as—The youth was working under the influence of a *spirituos* liquor.

217 Stationary=fixed, as—According to the ancient belief the earth was a *stationary* planet.

Stationery=the articles sold by a stationer; as—There is a *stationery* office in London for providing books, papers, etc to the government offices

218 Statue=an image, as—There is a *statue* of Vidyasagar in front of the college

Statute=a positive law, as—Those *statutes* are no longer in force

219 Stop—To stop is to arrest motion, as—I *stopped* in the street to talk to a friend of mine

Stay—To stay is to remain after our motion has been arrested, as—I *stayed* at his house for five days

220 Tamper=to practise secretly and unfairly, as—The witnesses have been *tampered* with

Temper=constitutional frame or state of mind, as—The man lost his *temper* and gave him a slap on the cheek

221 Team=a number of persons associated for doing something conjointly, as—There will be a foot-ball match between the Calcutta Club and the Mohan Bagan *team*.

Teem=to abound, as—These tanks *teem* with fish.

222 Temperament=disposition, as—He is a man of sanguine *temperament*

Temperance=moderation, as—*Temperance* is the best physic

Temperature=degree of any quality specially of heat or cold, as—In Calcutta the *temperature* rises very high in May and June

223 Temporal=worldly, it is opposed to *spiritual*, as—Use *temporal* things, but desire eternal.

Temporary=lasting for a short time, as—The culprit took advantage of the *temporary* absence of the master of the house

224. **Tenor**=purport, as—The *tenor* of his speech was this

Tenure=holding, as—Half a year is no mean fraction of a Viceroy's *tenure*.

225 **Timber**=wood for building purposes, as—Boats are made of the *timber* of this tree

Timbre=tone, character or quality of a musical sound as—The *timbre* of a sound produced by a violin is very sweet

✓ 226 **Timid**—A timid person is naturally afraid of danger, but may at times be courageous, as—At one time the people of this country were not very *timid*

Coward—A coward can never be courageous and always trembles at the approach of danger, as—"Cowards die many times before their deaths"

✓ 227 **Trade**—is carried on, on a large or small scale, within or without the country, as—There may be a *trade* between Dacca and Chittagong

Commerce—is always carried on a large scale and with different countries, as—There is *commerce* between England and India

228 **Transient Transitory**=lasting for a short time, as—Your speech made a very *transient* impression on his mind He cared very little for this *transitory* life

✓ 229 **Truce**=a suspension of hostilities between two armies for a period specially agreed upon, as—They sent an officer with a flag of *truce*

Treaty—is more formal and prolonged than *truce*, as—The war was brought to a close by a *treaty*

✓ 230 **Vacant**—is applied to a space which was previously filled, but is empty at the present moment, as—The post of the second clerk has fallen *vacant*

Empty—does not imply that the space was previously filled, as—*Empty* vessels sound much

✓ **231 Value**—The value of a thing is that which it is really worth, as—They do not understand the *value* of time

Price—The price of a thing is that which is demanded or which we pay for it, as—The *price* I paid for the ring was far above its real value

232 Variance=disagreement, as—Our acts should not be at *variance* with our words

Variation=difference, change, as—The *variation* in the price of paper is due to the war

233 Verbal=oral, as—I came to know this from a *verbal* message

Verbose=abounding in words, as—The author writes in a *verbose* style

234. Venal=mercenary, as—The services lent by law-years are but *venal*

Venial=pardonable, as—An offence committed by a child is *venial*

235. Veracious=truthful, as—A *veracious* man is loved and admired by all

Voracious=eager to devour, as—The mouth of a *vora-cious* person waters at the sight of food

236 Veracity=truthfulness, truth, as—We are not responsible for the *veracity* of his statement

Voracity=greediness, as—The soldiers fell to eating with *voracity*

237 Verity=truth, as—I have strong doubts as regards the *verity* of his assertion.

Variety=quality or state of being various, —as *Varieties* of dishes were supplied to the guests

✓238 **Very**—is used with adjectives and adverbs in the *positive* degree and with *present* participles used as adjectives, as—I am *very* glad to see you He expressed his ideas *very* clearly The scenery of Sitakund is *very* charming

Much—is used with adjectives and adverbs in the *comparative* degree and with *past* participles used as adjectives, as—This horse is *much* better than that He spoke *much* more fluently than he had done on previous occasions He is *much* ashamed of his conduct

✓239 **Very much**—is used with adjectives and adverbs in the *comparative* degree and with *past* participles; as—The earth is *very much* larger than the moon I feel *very much* better to day He is *very much* ashamed of his conduct

Much too—can be used only with adjectives, as—This room is *much too* small for my accommodation

Too much—is often used with nouns and *past* participles; as—*Too much* noise disturbed my sleep The child was *too much* frightened at the sight of the ox

✓240 **Virtuous**=good, as—The *virtuous* are really happy

Virtual=actual, as—"It was scarcely flying it was vanishing—a *virtual* evaporation"

✓241 **Visitor**—is applied to human beings, as—The remarks of the *visitor* are not favourable to our interests

Visitant—is applied to heavenly beings, as—The celestial *visitant* appeared again the next night

✓242. **Wilful**=obstinate, as—A *wilful* man is not amenable to reason

Willing=disposed, having the will inclined to a thing, as—Fortune is not *willing* to lavish her favours upon men like them

Willingly—One *willingly* does a good or right thing, as—I have *willingly* given up my claim

Wilfully—One *wilfully* does a bad thing, as—He *wilfully* persists in speaking ill of me

243 **Desirable**=worthy of desire, agreeable, as—Wealth without health is not *desirable*

Desirous—He seems *desirous* of exercising despotism over all who approach him

244 **Womanly**—is used a good sense, as—The lady was endowed with all *womanly* qualities

Womanish—is used in a bad sense, as—Such timidity on the part of a prince is *womanish*

245 **Wreath**=a garland, as—From distance the fire looked like a *wreath* of flowers

Wreathe=to make a garland, as—*Wreathe* a garland with these flowers

II

1 **Downcast**=dejected, as—The traveller journeyed homeward in a very *downcast* mood **Cast down**=to turn downward, as—His eyes were *cast down* and tears were found in them

2 **Downfall**=ruin, fall, as—The treachery of the prime minister was the principal cause of the *downfall* of the empire

Fall down—The boy *fell down* from the terrace

3 **Downpour**=a shower of rain, as—We could not go out on account of a heavy *downpour* **Pour down**—Some body *poured down* water from the first floor

4 **Inbreak**=a sudden invasion, as—Sultan Mahmud made several *inbreaks* into India **Break in**=to open forcibly by breaking, as—The robbers tried in vain to *break in* the floor of the house

5 **Income**—Every Indian having an *income* above Rs 80 has to pay a tax **Come in**=to arrive, as—The train *came* punctually at 3 o'clock

6. *Inlet*=a passage by which anything is let in, as—There is no *inlet* to admit light and air into the room *Let in*=to admit, as—There should be a sufficient number of doors and windows to *let in* light and air

7 *Offset*=a sum or amount set off against another as an equivalent, as—That *offset* was wrongly put by the clerk

Set off=to start; as—I shall *set off* for Calcutta to-morrow

8 *Offshoot*=branch, as—The *offshoots* of the tree are moving to and fro *Shoot off*=to discharge, as—The French soldiers were *shooting off* at random.

9 *Onset*=a violent attack, as—The infantry had to bear the brunt of the enemy's *onset* *Set on*=to instigate; as—You have *set on* him to insult me

10 *Outbreak*=a breaking out, as—The school was closed for a fortnight on account of a violent *outbreak* of small-pox *Break out*=to appear suddenly, as—Cholera has *broken out* in the suburbs of Calcutta

11. *Outburst*=an explosion, as—The ladies trembled with fear at the sudden *outburst* of a bomb. *Burst out*=to issue suddenly, as—The sun *burst out* from the clouds.

12 *Outcast*=a person excommunicated from society, as—The barrister was looked upon as an *outcast* by the orthodox Hindus *Cast out*=expel, as—The gentleman was *cast out* from the Hindu society.

13 *Outcome*=result, as—This is the *outcome* of his zealous efforts. *Come out*=to be published, as—The fourth edition of the book will *come out* very soon

14 *Outcry*=a loud cry of distress, as—A sudden *outcry* raised by the inmates of the house drew the attention of the police *Cry out*=to exclaim, as—My servant *cried out* that he had been shot in the left leg

15 *Outfall*=the place of discharge of a river, sewer

etc , as—The *outfall* of the main sewer has been very badly designed *Fall out*=to quarrel , as—The robbers *fell out* over the looted articles.

✓ 16 *Out fit*=complete equipment , as—Sen and Co , the famous tailors of Calcutta, furnish the police with *outfits* *Fit out*=to equip , as—They *fitted out* a vessel to carry provisions to France

17 *Outgo*=expenditure as—Your *outgo* should be in proportion to your income. *Go out*=to be extinguished , as—The light has *gone out*

✓ 18. *Out grow*=to surpass in growth , as—The infant has *outgrown* its clothing *Grow out*=to result from , as—Many customs have *grown out* of superstition

19 *Outlay*=that which is laid out , as—The *outlay* in agriculture did not bring in the desired profit *Lay out*=to invest , as—I *laid out* a considerable sum of money in trade

20 *Outlet*=the place or means by which anything is let out , as—She did not find words to give an *outlet* to her feelings *Let out*=to lease , as—I have *let out* my carriages on hire

21 *Outlive*=to survive , as—Simon Lee was the only man to *outlive*. *Live out*=to pass , as—Let the old man *live out* his day in peace

✓ 22 *Outlook*=view , as—The *outlook* of a river from the summit of a hill is very charming *Look out*=to search out , as—My clerk is *looking out* lodgings for you

23 *Output*=production , as—The *output* of this mill is greater than that of the other *Put out*=to extinguish , as—*Put out* the lamp

24 *Outrun*=to go beyond in running , as—Even a horse could not *outrun* him *Run out*=to expire ; as—The lease will *run out* on the 30th December.

25 **Outset**=beginning, as—At the *outset* I had not a single friend to help me in this undertaking **Set out**=to start, as—We *set out* upon a journey

26 **Outspeak**=to speak louder or longer than, as—The president did not allow a single member to *outspeak* **Speak out**=to say freely what a man has in his mind, as—Every individual has a right to *speak out* his own thoughts

27 **Outstand**=to resist, as—The troops of Austria could not *outstand* the sudden attack of Napoleon **Stand out**=to project, as—No verandah *stands out* from the building

28 **Out-turn**=production, as—The *out turn* of the factory does not come up to our expectations **Turn out**=to expel, as—The boy was *turned out* of the school for gross misconduct

29 **Overcome**=to subdue, as—I am *overcome* with fatigue **Come over**=to come into the mind of, as—A thorough change *came over* him after the death of his father

30 **Overdo**=to boil too much, as—The fish is *overdone* **Do over**=to perform a second time, as—The mason was asked to *do* the thing *over*

31 **Overdraw**=to draw beyond one's credit, as—The merchant *overdrew* a sum of Rs 3000 from the bank by mistake **Draw over**=to induce to change sides, as—My friend was *drawn over* to the side of my enemy

32 **Over-grow**=to grow beyond the proper size, as—The child has *overgrown* **Grow over**—Grass has *grown over* the field

33 **Over-hold**=to overvalue, as—There are some persons who will always *overhold* their writings **Hold over**=to postpone, as—The discussion was *held over* to the next meeting

34 *✓* **Over-look**=to take no notice of, as—Teachers should not *overlook* the faults of their pupils **Look over**=to examine, as—The auditor *looked over* the accounts

35 **Over-reach**=to cheat, as—The widow has been *over reached* by a swindler. **Reach over**—The ladder does not *reach over* the roof of the house

36 **Over-rule**=to declare to be invalid, as—The court *over-ruled* the objection raised by the counsel for the accused **Rule over**—The king *ruled over* the country in perfect peace

37 *✓* **Over-take**=to catch, as—The deer was soon *over-taken* by the tiger **Take over**—The new Head Master has not yet *taken over* charge of his office

38 **Overthrow**=act of bringing to an end; as—The professor explained fully the causes that led to the *overthrow* of the Moghul Empire **Throw over**=to desert, as—We should not *throw over* our friends in difficulties

39 **Uphold**=to approve, as—Their lordships *upheld* the sentence passed by the lower court **Hold up**=to raise, as—*Hold up* your head

40 **Upkeep**=maintenance, as—A large sum of money was raised by subscription for the *upkeep* of the school **Keep up**=to continue to maintain, as—It is health that *keeps up* good looks

41 **Upset**=to turn upside down, as—The other day three boats were *upset* off Chandpal *ghat* **Set up**=to establish, as—He *set up* a new school in his own village

42 **Upshot**=final issue, as—The *upshot* of the case proves nothing of the kind **Shot up**—He *shot up* so soon that I could hardly recognize him

43 **Upstart**=one who has suddenly risen from poverty or obscurity to wealth or power, as—An *upstart* will never

miss an opportunity to make a display of his wealth or power
Start up = to rise suddenly, as—The girl *started up* when her mother entered the room

✓ **44 Withhold** = to keep back, as—The privilege of free studentship was *withheld* from all the boys whose attendance at school was not regular. **Hold with** = to agree with, as—I cannot *hold with* you upon that point

✓ **45 Withstand** = to resist, as—The Austrian troops could not *withstand* the sudden attack of Napoleon **Stand with** = to agree with, as—These instances do not *stand with* every person

QUESTIONS

1 Distinguish the meanings of the following —

(C U 1902)

Lane, lain, loan, loan-, berry, bury, beer, bier, seller, cellar, plane, plain, ball, bawl, vain, vein, vane, ore, oar, soar, sore, blew, blue

Ans. Lane = a narrow passage or street

Lain = the past participle of the verb *to lie*

Loan = anything lent, a place for milking cows

Lone = alone, solitary

Berry = a kind of fruit

Bury = to hide in the ground, to place in the grave

Beer = a kind of liquor

Bier = a carriage for bearing the dead to the grave

Seller = vender

Cellar = an underground room

Plane = a level surface

Plain = level, simple; an open field.

Ball = a globular body to play with in tennis, football, etc.,
 1 entertainment of dancing

Bawl=a loud cry

Vain=fruitless, unreal, conceited.

Vein=one of the vessels which convey the blood back to the heart

Vane=a flag

Ore=metal as it comes from the mine

Oar=a light pole for propelling a boat

Soar=to mount into the air

Sore=an ulcer, severe

Blew→past tense of *blow*

Blue=one of the seven primary colours, sea, sky.

2. Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning or usage between the following pairs of words —
(C U 1905)

Faint, feint, practice, practise, lightning, lightening, very, much, very-much, too much

3 Construct sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning between the following pairs of words —(C U 1907)

Temporal, temporary, continual, continuous, notorious, illustrious, contemptuous, contemptible

4 Construct sentences illustrating the right use of the following words — (C U 1908)

Deny, refuse, admit, acknowledge, willing, desirous, hope, expect, doubt, suspect

5 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning or usage between any three of the following pairs of words and phrases— (C U 1910)

Very much, too much, compared with, compared to, principal, principle, senseless, meaningless, compliment, complement, elicit, illicit, stationary, stationery

6 Construct sentences to illustrate the use of the following pairs of words — (C U 1911)

Hear, listen , since, from , refuse, deny

7 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference between—gladder and gladlier (C U 1912)

8 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning between any three of the following pairs of words — (C U 1913.)

Artist, artisan , notable, notorious , practical, practicable , principal, principle

9 Make short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning between any three of the following pairs of words — (C U 1914)

Credible, credulous , human, humane , judicial, judicious , wreath, wreath

10. Explain and illustrate by short sentences the difference in meaning between the following pairs — (C U 1916)

Beneficial, beneficent, expedient, expeditious, few, a few

11. Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning between any three of the following pairs of words — (C U 1917)

Corporal, corporeal , comprehensive, comprehensible , officious, official , verbal, verbose

12 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in usage between the following —*very* and *much*, *very much* and *too much*, *each other* and *one another*. (C U 1919)



CHAPTER XIX.

SIMILAR SENTENCES DISTINGUISHED.

1. I plucked a red and white flower = I plucked a flower that was partly red and partly white

I plucked a red and a white flower. = I plucked two flowers one being red and the other white

2. I bought a doctor's gown and cap = I bought a gown and a cap both of which are usually used by a doctor

I bought a doctor's gown and a cap = I bought a gown which is usually used by a doctor, and a cap which has no reference to a doctor

3. A lame boy and girl came with him = A lame boy and a lame girl came with him

A lame boy and a girl came with him = A lame boy and a girl (who was not lame) came with him

4. The Magistrate and Collector went there = One person, who was both Magistrate and Collector, went there

The Magistrate and the Collector went there = Two persons (one was the Magistrate and the other was the Collector) went there

5. He is a better clerk than teacher = He is both clerk and teacher, but he is more expert in clerkship than in teaching

He is a better clerk than a teacher = He is a better clerk than a teacher would make The sentence refers to two persons

6. He is a member of society = He is not a man who has cut off all connection with the world.

He is a member of a society = He is a member of an association

7 He is a neighbour to me = He lives near me ✓

He is neighbour to me = He is sympathetic and kind to me

8 He suffers from headache = He suffers from a chronic disease, namely, headache

He suffers from a headache. = He suffers from an occasional attack of headache.

9 He is Kalidas = He is Kalidas himself ✓

He is a Kalidas = He is a poet like Kalidas

10 He writes in difficult language = The style he follows is a difficult one

He writes in a difficult language = The language (such as Sanskrit) in which he writes is a difficult one

11 I shall make room for you — Here *room* means an *open space*

I shall make a room for you — Here *room* means an *apartment*

12 He is determined to go to sea. = He is determined to be a sailor

He is determined to go to the sea = He is determined to make a voyage

13 He will go to market = He will go to market for buying or selling something

He will go to the market = He will go to some particular market, not for buying or selling something, but for some other purpose

14 He will go to school = He will go to school to have instruction

He will go to the school = He will go to some particular school, not for instruction, but for some other purpose

15 I shall go to bed = I shall go to sleep

I shall go to the bed = I shall go to some particular bed,
not for sleep, but for some other purpose

16. He will not go to play = He will not take part in a
play such as cricket, foot-ball, etc

He will not go to the play = He will not go to the theatre
to see the performance of a play

17 I know French = I know the French language

I know the French = I know the French nation

18 I cannot keep house = I cannot manage the domestic
affairs of a household

I cannot keep the house = I cannot remain within doors

19 I set the letter on fire = I burnt the letter

I set the letter on the fire = I placed the letter on the
fire

20 This is a bust of Cicero = This is a representation
of Cicero

This is a bust of Cicero's = This is one of the many busts
of which Cicero is the owner

21 This is a portrait of my friend (1906) = This is a
likeness of my friend

This is a portrait of my friend's = This is one of the
pictures of my friend

22 What do you think of my horse running to-day?
(C U 1906) = What is your opinion about my horse that
is going to run to day?

What do you think of my horse's running to-day? = What
is your opinion about the race my horse has run to day?

23 I believe you have a book of mine (1901) = I have
many books and I believe you have one of them

I believe you have my book = I believe you have the book
which belongs to me

24 This news of Ram's must be true (1901) = This news which Ram has brought must be true

This news of Ram must be true = This news about Ram must be true

25 He was only poor (1906) = Poverty was his only disqualification, i.e., he was poor, but not dishonest

He only was poor = He and no one else was poor

26 He lost his only child (1915) = He had only one child whom he lost

He lost his child only = He lost his child and nobody else

27 He thinks little of your book = He has a low opinion of your book.

He little thinks of your book = He seldom thinks of your book

28 I alone can finish this = I and nobody else can finish this

I can finish this alone = I can finish this without any one's help

29 I walked about four miles = I walked a little less than four miles

I walked four miles about = I made a circuit of four miles

30 Only he reads Sanskrit = He and nobody else reads Sanskrit

He only reads Sanskrit = He reads Sanskrit but does not write it

He reads only Sanskrit = He reads Sanskrit, and no other language

He reads Sanskrit only = He reads Sanskrit and does nothing else more worthy

31 He has come late = He has come after the usual time
He has come lately = He has come recently

32 Go to school direct = Go to school without stopping on the way

33 Go to school directly = Go to school at once (without delay)

34 We reached Calcutta safe = We were safe when we reached Calcutta

35 We reached Calcutta safely = No danger happened in the way

36 I work hard at night = I work diligently at night
I hardly work at night = I scarcely work at night

37 We found the way easy = There was no difficulty in the way

38 We found the way easily = We found the way without difficulty

39 Happily he did not die = It was a happy thing that he did not die

He did not die happily = He did not die in peace

40 I will tell you shortly how to proceed = I will tell you in a short time how to proceed

41 I will tell you briefly how to proceed = I will tell you in a few words how to proceed

42 He came here this morning — This expression can be used by a person after the morning is over

43 He has come here this morning — This expression can be used by a person before the morning is over

44 He has come = His coming is completed by the present time The word "come" is part of a tense here

45 He is come = He is in the state of having come The word "come" is a past participle here

46 He has lived in England for two years — This implies that he lives there even at the present time

He lived in England for two years — This implies that he does not live there at the present time

41 He appears to be rich — This implies that he is rich at the present moment

He appears to have been rich — This implies that he was rich before, but not so at the present time

42 Rabindra Babu wrote a book — This implies that the book is not in existence

Rabindra Babu has written a book — This implies that the book is in existence

43 I am to go = It is settled that I shall go

I have to go = I am under obligation to go

44. I was to go to Calcutta last month = It was arranged that I should go to Calcutta last month, but I could not

I had to go to Calcutta last month = I was obliged to go to Calcutta last month

45 I may have done this = I am not sure whether I did this or not

I might have done this = I did not do this, although I was permitted to do this

46 He intended to come = I am not sure whether he came or not

He intended to have come = Something prevented him from coming

47 I am glad to see you — This can be said by a person when he calls on you

I am glad to have seen you — This can be said by a person at the time of leaving you

48 Let me go = Allow me to go

Let me alone. = Leave me alone

Let the room to me = Give me the possession and use of the room for rent.

49 The house looks to the north = The house faces the north

The house looks gloomy = The house appears gloomy

✓ 50 If the book be in the library = It is not known if the book is in the library.

If the book is in the library = It is known that the book is in the library

If the book were in the library = It is known that the book is not in the library

✓ 51 Can I read this ? - Shall I be able to read this ?

May I read this ? = Will you permit me to read this ?

52 Who is he ?—This is an enquiry about a persons's name or designation

What is he ?—This is an enquiry about a person's occupation or social position

Which is he ?—This is an enquiry about some particular person to be pointed out from among a group of persons

53 Are you coming to the theatre ?—This implies that the man who asks the question intends to be present at the theatre

Are you going to the theatre ?—This does not imply if the man who asks the question will be present at the theatre or not

54 Come away from this place —This implies that the speaker also is leaving the place

Go away from this place —This does not imply that the speaker also is leaving the place

✓ 55 I am willing (1916) = I have no objection to do something, this has a negative force

I wish = I intend to do something, this has a positive force

56 The accused stole a child = The accused took away a child stealthily

The accused robbed a child = The accused deprived a child of its possessions

57 This will not avail (1916) = This will be of no use

I wish to avail myself of this = I wish to make use of this to my advantage

58 I have looked over the accounts = I have examined the accounts

I have overlooked the accounts. = I have taken no notice of the accounts.

59. I would do it if I could = I would do it if I had the power to do it

I could do it, if I would = I could do it if I had a mind to do it

60 I have written the letter = I have written the letter with my own hand.

I have the letter written = I have caused the letter to be written by somebody else

61 I saw him go = I saw him leave the place

I saw him going = I saw him when he was on his way

62 I daresay he is not honest = I believe he is not honest

I dare to say he is not honest. = I venture to say that he is not honest

63 He is poor, but honest = His poverty has not made him dishonest

He is poor, though honest = His honesty has not removed his poverty

64 As he is ill, he cannot go to school = Since he is ill, he cannot go to school

Ill as he is, he can go to school = Though he is ill, yet he can go to school

65 Do it or you die = You will die if you do not do it
Do it and you die = You will die if you do it.

66 He writes English as well as speaks it = He writes English and also speaks it

He writes English as well as he speaks it = He writes English with the same proficiency with which he speaks it

67 The jury was of one mind — Here the members of the jury are taken collectively, hence the verb is singular

The jury were of one mind — Here the members of the jury are taken individually, hence the verb is plural

68 Take the medicine every three hours = Take the medicine at the expiration of three hours

Take the medicine every third hour. = Take the medicine at the expiration of two hours

69 She is the greatest poet = She is the greatest of all male and female poets

She is the greatest poetess = She is the greatest of all female poets

70 This is a very charming picture = This picture is charming *in a high degree*

This is a most charming picture = This picture is charming *in a very high degree*

This is the most charming picture = This picture is more charming than any of certain pictures with which it is compared

71 This is too charming a picture = This picture is more charming than can generally be expected

It was a matter of the first importance = It was a matter of the foremost importance

It was a matter of the last importance = It was a matter of the utmost importance

[Thus these two sentences mean the same thing]

It was a matter of the least importance = It was a matter of no importance.

72. I am the eldest son, = I am the first-born son

I am the oldest son = I am the oldest of all the surviving sons.

73 He loves you more than I = He loves you more than I love you

He loves you more than me. = He loves you more than he loves me

74 He was cleverer than any other Mahomedan — This implies that he himself was a Mahomedan

He was cleverer than any Mahomedan — This implies that he himself was not a Mahomedan

75 The fellow is sorry = The fellow is sad.

He is a sorry fellow, = He is a contemptible fellow

76 The fellow is sad = The fellow is sorry

He is a sad fellow = He is a fellow who makes others sad

77 John is well = John is in good health

John is well off = John is in good circumstances

78 I am not concerned in the transaction (1907) = I have no connection with it.

I am much concerned in the transaction = I am very anxious for the welfare of the transaction

79 There is a garden flower = There is a flower that grows in a garden and not in woods

There is a flower garden = There is a garden of flowers, not of fruits

80 Kindly excuse my not going to the theatre = Kindly excuse me for my inability to go to the theatre

Kindly excuse my going to the theatre = (1) Do not insist

on my going to the theatre. (2) Kindly excuse the fact of my having gone to the theatre

81 He has much work in hand = He has much work in which he is engaged

He has much work on hand = He has much work in which he is not yet engaged, but will have to be engaged very soon

82 Communicate with him on this (1907) = Write letters to him about this matter

Communicate this to him = Inform him of this matter verbally

83 I shall shut the door upon him = I shall shut the door after he has left the room

I shall shut the door against him = I shall shut the door so that he may not come in

84 Let us proceed to business (1907) = Let us begin business

Let us proceed with the business = Let us resume the business This implies that the business had been begun before

85 They arrived at the same time = They reached the place at the same time, say at 5 P M

They arrived in the same time = They took the same time (say, five hours) to travel

86 He will come within an hour = He will come before the expiry of an hour

He will come in an hour = He will come after the lapse of an hour

87. Henry was at fault = Henry was puzzled

Henry was in fault = Henry was to blame.

88 He will finish this in no time = He will finish this very quickly

He will finish this at no time, = He will never finish this

89 He parted with all his property (1907) = He disposed of all his property Here the separation is permanent

He parted from his friends. = He bade good-bye to his friends Here the separation is temporary.

90 They are dead in sin. = They are great sinners ✓

They are dead to sin = They are free from sin ,

91. This is the subject of discussion — This implies that the discussion is going on.

This is the subject for discussion — This implies that the discussion has not yet begun

92 I shall go there before Monday = I shall go there no later than Sunday I shall go there by Monday = I shall go there not later than Monday

93. He was disappointed of the prize. = He failed to get the prize.

He was disappointed in the prize = He got the prize, but it did not come up to his expectations

94. There is a tree at the top of the hill = There is a tree, not on the summit but somewhere near the summit

There is a tree on the top of the hill = There is a tree on the very summit of the hill

95. David Hare was of us = David Hare belonged to us, took part with us.

David Hare was for us = David Hare was on our side, acted in our behalf

96. I cannot attend to you. = I cannot pay heed to you ✓

I cannot attend upon you = I cannot wait on you

97 I live at Chittagong = I live at the town of Chittagong

I live in Chittagong. = I live in the district of Chittagong

98 I stopped at Calcutta = I stopped at Calcutta for some time on my way to some other place

I stopped in Calcutta = I took up my abode temporarily in Calcutta

99 I ran at him = I ran towards him, this does not imply actual contact

I ran against him = I came into violent contact with him

100 He enquired of me = He asked me about something

He enquired for me = He wished to know where I was

101 I will do it on a day = I will do it on a certain day

I will do it in a day = I will finish it during a whole day

I will do it in the day = I will do it during the day time, and not at night

✓ 102. The mountain is in the south of India = It is inside India.

The mountain is on the south of India = It is on the border of India

The mountain is to the south of India = It is outside India

103 The bird lives on wood = The bird feeds on wood

The bird lives in wood = The bird lives inside wood

✓ 104 What does he want of me? = What is the thing that he wants from me?

What does he want with me? = What business has he with me?

105 We ate the fruit = We ate the whole of the fruit.

We ate of the fruit = We ate a part of the fruit

✓ 106 I cannot believe him = I cannot accept his statement as true.

I cannot believe in him = I cannot trust in his honesty

✓ 107 The police searched the man = The police examined his clothes and other belongings

The police searched for the man = The police tried to find out where he was

✓ 108. I consulted a dictionary = I referred to a dictionary

I consulted him = I sought his advice or opinion

I consulted with him = I exchanged views with him

109 I met my brother = I came in front of my brother
accidentally or intentionally

I met with my brother = I came in front of my brother
accidentally

110 They worked the machine = They caused the
machine to work

They worked at the machine = They were busy with the
machine

111 I dealt the cards. = I distributed the cards

I dealt in cards = I sold cards

112 He fills a situation = He himself holds it

He fills up a situation = He appoints another person to it.

113 He took heart = He gained courage

He took it to heart = He was deeply affected by it

114 He can but try = He can only try ✓

He cannot but try = He cannot do anything except trying

115 She filled her room with second-hand furniture—

The furniture was not new

She filled her room with second-rate furniture—The
furniture was not of excellent quality

116 He struck the man dead = He struck him so as to
cause his death

He struck the dead man = He struck the man who was
already dead

117 There was a man = There was a man, not any other
animal

There was one man = There was one man, not two or
more

118 Not every one can do this = Some can do this

Not any one can do this = None can do this.

119 He paid me a half-rupee = He paid me one eight anna piece He paid me half a-rupee. = He paid me one or more coins equal to the value of eight annas

120. This is a black bird = This is a bird of black colour

This is a black-bird = This is a cuckoo

121 He is an old book-seller = He has been a book seller for a long time

He is an old-book seller = He is a man who sells old books

122 I read the book once again = I read the book only once more I read the book once and again. = I read the book many times

123 It rained continuously for a week = It rained unceasingly for a week

It rained continually for a week = It kept raining for a week with occasional breaks

124 This is a contemptuous remark = This remark indicates contempt

This is a contemptible remark = This remark deserves to be treated with contempt

125 He is a fast man. = He is an extravagant man

He is a fasting man = He is a man abstaining from food voluntarily

126 Where is the headman ? = Where is the chief man ?
Where is the headsman ? = Where is the executioner ?

CHAPTER XX

IDIOMATIC USES OF VERBS

ABOUND

Abound in—Fish *abound in* the tank The tank *abounds in* fish [*In* is placed both before the contained and the container]

Abound with—The tank *abounds with* fish Some parts of Europe *abound with* wild boars [*With* is placed only before the contained.]

ACCOMPANY

Accompany by—I went to the place *accompanied by* a friend. The Baron was *accompanied by* his wife

Accompany with—The petition was *accompanied with* a letter

ADMIT.

Admit into—He *admitted me into* the office.

Admit of—The sentence *admits of* two interpretations

Admit to—I was not *admitted to* the examination

AGREE.

Agree in—Few *agree in* their notions about these things

Agree on or upon—All the members *agreed upon* that point

Agree to—He did not *agree to* my proposal

Agree with—I quite *agree with* you in thinking that he is in the wrong The same food does not *agree with* every constitution.

ASK

Ask for—He *asked* me *for* five rupees.

Ask of (or from)—He *asked* three rupees *of* me

ATTEND

Attend to—A man cannot *attend to* (pay heed to) two objects at the same time

Attend upon—I had neither a servant nor a friend to *attend upon* (to wait on) me during my illness

BEAR.

Bear down—He was strong enough to *bear down* (crush by force) his opponents.

Bear out—Even his enemies *bore out* (supported) the truth of his statement

Bear up—She *bore up* (endured) bravely when she was beset with difficulties on all sides

Bear upon—His arguments did not *bear upon* (relate to) the question

Bear with—I cannot *bear with* (tolerate) his impertinence

BETRAY

Betray into—They *betrayed* me *into* the hands of my enemy

Betray to—He *betrayed* his country *to* the French

BLUSH

Blush at—The lady *blushed at* the mention of her own good deeds

Blush for—He *blushed for* shame

BREAK

Break down—The widow was *broken down* (overwhelmed) with grief at the loss of her only child The Magistrate ordered the police to *break down* the wall in dispute

Break forth—The man *broke forth* (came out suddenly) from the bush.

Break in—The ruffians *broke in* (opened forcibly by breaking) the door and entered the room

Break into—The cattle *broke into* (entered suddenly) the field of paddy and did much damage

Break off—He *broke off* (stopped) in the middle of his sentence

Break open—The thief *broke open* the box and ^{ca} off its contents

Break out—Immediately after the flood, cholera *broke out* (appeared suddenly) and swept off numbers in the district

Break up—The meeting *broke up* (dispersed) in great confusion

Break with—I cannot *break with* (cease to be a friend with) my neighbours

BRING.

Bring about—Innumerable changes have been *brought about* (caused to happen) in the country by the British Government

Bring down—His pride was *brought down* (humbled) by his failure in the examination

Bring forth—At the age of twenty, she *brought forth* (gave birth to) her second son A good tree is sure to *bring forth* (produce) good fruits

Bring in—His mills *bring him in* a large income.

Bring on—Intemperance *brings on* (causes) many diseases.

Bring out—The enquiry of the police *brought out* (exposed) many secrets

Bring over—He did his best to *bring me over* to his party (to cause to change sides)

Bring to—The enquiry *brought to* light (exposed) many abuses At last the great war was *brought to* an end by the treaty

Bring up—I was *brought up* (educated) by my uncle

CALL

Call at—I shall *call at* (pay a short visit to) your place at 6 o'clock

Call for—Your absence from the class *calls for* (demands) punishment I have *called for* his explanation

Call forth—Danger *calls forth* (requires the exercise of) fortitude

Call in—Please *call in* a doctor at once

Call off—His attention was *called off* (diverted) from his studies by a noise

Call on—I called on (paid a short visit to) him last Monday

Call out—My brother *called out* (uttered loudly) something, but I could not catch his words He *called out*, "thief, thief," in fear

Call over—Please *call over* the names on the roll

Call to—He *called to* (addressed in a loud voice) him over and over again, but got no reply. He will soon be *called to* account Romesh has been *called to* the bar

Call up—I could not call up (recollect) his name I was *called up* at midnight by the sergeant.

Call upon—He was *called upon* to give evidence in the Court *Call upon* (look up to) me on the day of trouble

CARRY (C U 1912)

Carry away—The bell was *carried away* by the monkeys He is apt to be *carried away* by pity

Carry off—Many people of the province have been *carried off* by cholera this year

Carry on—The three brothers *carried on* a business after their father's death

Carry out—I dismissed the servant, for he did not *carry out* my orders

Carry through—Honest labour will *carry you through* your difficulties. However ill begun, the work must be *carried through*

CATCH

Catch at—A drowning man will *catch at* a straw

Catch up—*Catch up* the ball

✓✓ COME ✓✓

✓ Come about—I do not know how that event *came about* (took place).

Come across—She related the story to every man she *came across* (accidentally met)

✓ Come by—The boy could not account for how he *came by* (obtained) the ring. He *came by* his death in a mysterious way

Come down—Rice has *come down* (fallen in price)

Come into—On his uncle's death, he *came into* (got) fortune again. Chaitanya *came into* the world when men were steeped in superstition

✓ Come of—He *comes of* (descends from) a respectable family.

✓ Come off—Our examination will *come off* (take place) from Monday next

✓ Come out—An English edition of the Geeta has *come out* (been published) recently. He has *come out* successful

Come round—He will soon *come round* (recover from illness) under the treatment of a good physician

Come to—The fees realised from the students will *come to* (amount to) a large sum. After a little while he *came to* himself

Come upon—I *came upon* (met with 'accidentally) that passage while glancing over a novel The enemy *came upon* us by night

COMMUNICATE

Communicate to—Please *communicate* this news to my father

Communicate with—He *communicated with* me on that subject.

COMPARE (C U 1912)

Compare to—Things dissimilar are compared to one another by way of illustration, as—Death is *compared to* sleep. Shakespeare *compares* this world to a theatrical stage Money may be *compared to* manure, if gathered in heaps, it does no good,

Compare with—Similar are compared with similar, as—*Compare* the character of Sakuntala *with* that of Ratnavali The great Indian poet Kalidas is often *compared with* Shakespeare

CONFER

Confer on—The king *conferred* a favour on me

Confer with—He conferred (consulted) *with* my father about his marriage

CONFIDE

Confide in—I have no friend to *confide in* (to put faith in)

Confide to—I cannot *confide* the secret to a stranger

CONSIST

Consist in—"True courage *consists in* (lies in) the defiance of danger and pain"

Consist of—The army *consisted of* about twelve hundred men

Consist with—Health *consists with* (agrees with) temperance alone He took more exercise than *consisted with* his health

CORRESPOND

Correspond to—The trunk of the elephant *corresponds to* (resembles) the arm of a man

Correspond with—His views do not *correspond with* (agree with) mine Gopal does not *correspond with* (write letters to) his father regularly.

CRY

Cry down—His acts were *cried down* (deprecated) by his enemies

Cry for—The blood of the murdered *cries for* (desires) vengeance

Cry out—The child *cried out* for fear

Cry to—The Children *cried to* their mother for food

Cry up—He *cries up* his own articles as the best

DEAL

Deal by—He does not *deal fairly by* (behave towards) his domestics.

Deal in—The man *deals in* tea

Deal out—The Magistrate asked him to *deal out* (distribute) rice to the needy people of the district

Deal with—The book *deals with* religion We should *deal fairly with* every one.

DIE

Die by—Men die *by* weapons, *by* poison, etc , as—He *died by* his own sword

Die from—Men die *from* some cause as over work , as—
The widow *died from* starvation

Die of—Men die *of* a disease , as—Three men *died of* cholera yesterday

DIFFER

Differ from—Two things differ *from* each other in certain respects , as—How does *an* adverb *differ from* an adjective ?

Differ with—A man differs *with* another on a subject or in opinions , as—The gentleman *differs with* me on that point

DISPOSE

Dispose of—The man has *disposed of* (sold) all his goods

Dispose to—Suspicious *dispose* kings *to* tyranny

DO

✓ Do away with—That custom was *done away with* (discontinued)

✓ Do for—The box will *do for* (serve the purpose of) a table

Do into—*Do* this passage *into* (translate into) English

Do over—I was asked to *do* the thing *over* (to do it a second time)

DRAW

Draw off—The General commanded the army to *draw off* (retire)

Draw on or upon—I *drew on* (ordered for the payment of money) the banker to meet the expenses of my journey He was attacked with fever when the day of examination *drew on* (approached)

Draw out—Even her old friends could not *draw her out* (induce her to give out her thoughts)

Draw over—He was *drawn over* (persuaded to change sides) to the side of his father's enemies

Draw to—His conduct was so graceful that I *drew to* (felt attracted to) him at once.

Draw up—The soldiers were *drawn up* (arranged) in battle array *Draw up* a deed

FALL.

Fall in—The roof of the brick-house has *fallen in*

Fall off—In the rainy season, the number of students *falls off* (diminishes)

Fall on or upon—They *fell upon* (attacked) the enemy

Fall out—Brothers should not *fall out* (quarrel) with one another

Fall through—Owing to the mismanagement of the Secretary, the business *fell through* (failed)

Fall to—When the dinner was brought in, we *fell to* eating (began to eat greedily) with great appetite

GET. (C. U. 1903)

✓ Get at—He could not *get at* (arrive at) the truth.

✓ Get down—Do not try to *get down* (descend) from a moving car

✓ Get into—Do not try to *get into* (enter) a car while it is in motion

✓ Get off—The thief *got off* (escaped) with impunity.

✓ Get on—I am *getting on* (making progress) well with my studies.

✓ Get over—A persevering man can *get over* (surmount) all obstacles to his success

✓ Get through—I have *got through* (finished) the book once.

✓ Get to—They *got to* (reached) their destination before dusk.

✓ Get up—He *gets up* (rises) early in the morning

GIVE

✓ Give away—The merchant *gave away* (made over) the whole of his property to the Poor Fund

✓ Give in—The general *gave in* (yielded) when half his men fell in battle

✓ Give out—She is not in the habit of *giving out* (revealing) her secrets

✓ Give over—The man has *given over* (left) taking opium

Give to—He is *given to* (addicted to) drinking

✓ Give up—No persuasion, no bribe^s shall make him *give up* (abandon) his point

GO

✓ Go by—You should *go by* (follow) your father's advice

✓ Go down—This excuse won't *go down* (be accepted as valid) in a court of law

✓ Go in for—Are you *going in for* (competing for) the B A degree this year?

✓ Go out—The light has *gone out* (become extinguished)

✓ Go over—I had no time to *go over* (read) these pages

✓ Go through—I have *gone through* (finished) the book once.

HOLD

Hold by—Having nothing to *hold by* (adhere to), he fell to the ground

Hold in—I advised him to *hold in* (restrain) his temper

Hold off—I shall not go out till the rain *holds off* (ceases)

Hold out—He *held out* temptations to me

Hold over—The discussion was *held over* (postponed) to the next meeting

Hold to—He always *holds to* (adheres to) his principle

INQUIRE

Inquire about or after—The Head Master *inquired about* the character of the boy The mother *inquired after* the health of her son.

Inquire into—The public *inquired into* the cause of the murder.

Inquire of—I *inquired of* (asked) the boy if his father had come back from Calcutta

INTRUDE.

Intrude into—The servant was punished for *intruding into* their private room

Intrude on or upon—I beg to be excused for *intruding upon* your valuable time.

INVEST.

Invest in—I have *invested my* money *in* trade

Invest with—He has been *invested with* the powers of a Magistrate of the second class

KEEP

Keep away—The boy *kept away* (remained absent) from school for a week

Keep down—The rioters were *kept down* by the police.

Keep in—I could not *keep in* (restrain) the horse.

Keep in with—No gentleman can *keep in with* (be on friendly terms with) such a bad pay-master

Keep on—The man *kept on* (continued) singing

Keep to—Old men *keep to* (adhere to) old habits.

Keep out—This coat will enable you to *keep out* the cold.

Keep up—It is health that *keeps up* good looks

KNOCK

Knock against—He *knocked my* head *against* the wall.

Knock at—I *knocked at* the door

Knock down—He *knocked me down* by a heavy blow

Knock off—I was compelled to *knock off* (cease from) work

Knock out—He *knocked her brains out*

Knock up—Please *knock me up* (arouse by knocking) at four in the morning

✓ LOOK

Look after—He employed a tutor to *look after* (take care of) his son

Look at—I asked him to *look at* the image

Look down upon—The rich *look down upon* (treat with contempt) the poor

Look for—*Look for* the lost watch I *looked for* his arrival

Look forward to—We *looked forward to* (waited eagerly for) the publication of the result of our examination

Look into—The auditor *looked into* (closely examined) the accounts.

Look on or upon—The King *looks upon* (considers) us as his children.

Look out for—The Inspector *looked out for* (searched for) some letters.

~~Look over—~~The teacher *looked over* (examined cursorily) my answers.

~~Look through—~~I have *looked through* (examined carefully) the book written by you

Look to—We *look to* God for help.

Look up—"The youth who will not *look up* will look down"

Look up to—We *look up to* God for help They *look up to* (respect) you as their father

MAKE (C. U 1904)

Make at—The furious bull *made at* (rushed against) the boy.

Make away—He *made away* (transferred) his property to his nephew.

~~Make~~ away with—He *made away with* (killed) the king at night

Make off—The servant *made off* (ran away) with twenty rupees

Make out—I cannot *make out* (understand) the meaning of this passage.

Make over—He *made over* (transferred) his property to his eldest son.

Make up—I shall try to *make up* my arrears during the vacation

PART (C U 1912)

Part from—We part from a person, as—He *parted from* his mother for two years

Part with—We part with a person or thing, as—He was unwilling to *part with* his servant Old men are unwilling to *part with* their money

PICK (C U 1904)

Pick off—The French General ordered the sharp-shooters to *pick off* (to shoot one by one) their enemy.

Pick out—He *picked out* (selected) one out of the two hundred pictures

Pick up—The elephant can with its trunk *pick up* from the ground a two anna or a four-anna piece

PREVAIL.

Prevail over—Virtue always *prevails over* (gains superiority over) vice

Prevail upon or with—I *prevailed upon* (persuaded) him to agree to the proposal. No argument *prevailed with* him

PROVIDE

Provide against—A prudent man should *provide against* a rainy day

Provide for—He *provided for* the education of his son

Provide with—The examinees will be *provided with* paper and ink

PUT

Put by—I have not yet been able to *put by* (save) a single penny

Put down—I *put down* my name for three rupees (subscribed three rupees)

Put forth—I *put forth* (exerted) all my energy to finish the work before the evening

Put in—I shall *put in* (claim) for a share in the profits

Put off—He *put off* (took off) his clothes and went to sleep
The case was *put off* (postponed) till the third January

Put on—I asked him to *put on* (wear) his coat and go with me

Put out—Please *put out* (extinguish) the lamp

Put up—I do not like to *put up* (stay) with Naren. *Put up* a sign-board

Put up with—No gentleman can *put up with* (tolerate) such insolence

RUN (C U 1904)

Run at—The girl began to cry when an ox *ran at* (attacked) her brother

Run away —The stag *ran away* (fled) as fast as possible

Run down—He set his dog to *run down* (chase) a fox

Run out—He *ran out* (exhausted) his father's property in three years The lease will *run out* (expire) on the 30th December

Run over—The other day a tram-car *ran over* an old woman

Run through—He *ran through* (wasted) his estate and wanted to borrow

✓ SET

Set about—He advised me to *set about* (begin) a business without delay

Set down—I *set him down* (rebuked) for his impertinence
This item was not *set down* (entered in writing) in the account book

✓ Set forth—The teacher asked me to *set forth* (describe) fully the third battle of Panipat

✓ Set in—The winter has *set in* (begun).

✓ Set off—He will *set off* (start) for Calcutta to morrow

Set on or upon—You have *set on* (instigated) him to insult me He *set* a dog *on* the beggar

Set out—He *set out* (started) for Rangoon on the 20th ultimo.

Set up—He *set up* (established) a new school in his own village.

TAKE

Take after—The boy *takes after* (resembles) his father

Take down—The Inspector *took down* (recorded) his statement.

Take for—I *took him for* a learned man

Take in—He could not *take in* (understand) what you said
This woman is too clever to be *taken in* (cheated).

Take to—We should not *take to* (adopt) unfair means.

Take up—There is none to *take up* our cause

Take up with—He was *taken up with* (occupied with) writing letters

TURN

~~Turn~~ in—I *turn in* (go to bed) at ten o'clock

Turn into—The passage was *turned into* (translated into) English

Turn off—He *turned off* (performed) a great deal of work in two hours The road *turns off* (deviates) to the left

Turn on or upon—The decision *turned on* (depended upon) a single fact

Turn out—He was *turned out* of (expelled from) the school for gross misconduct

~~Turn~~ over—His friends advised him to *turn over* a new leaf (to reform his conduct and begin a new life)

Turn up—She *turned up* her nose (showed contempt by bending the nose) at my offer and went away

CHAPTER XXI.

WORDS FOLLOWED BY APPROPRIATE
PREPOSITIONS

Abhorrence *of*, but abhorrent *to* —Their abhorrence *of* sin was very great Cruelty *to* animals is abhorrent *to* a kind-hearted man

~~Abide~~ *by, in, with* —You must abide *by* his decision He wishes to abide *in* your house this night, Please permit me to abide *with* him a few days

Abound *in, with* —The garden abounds *in* or *with* flowers, Flowers abound *in* the garden

~~Absent~~ *from*, but present *at* —The boy was absent *from* school He was present *at* school

✓ Absorbed *in*, but taken up *with* —He was deeply absorbed *in* the study of a novel He was taken up *with* his work

✕ Acceptable *to* —Such presents are not acceptable *to* a gentleman
ग्राह्य के लिये

✓ Accessory *to* —The servant was accessory *to* the crime

Accommodate *to*, *with* —The woman accommodated herself *to* her circumstances The Head master accommodated the student *with* lodgings.

Accompanied *by*, *with* —I went to Calcutta accompanied *by* a friend He suffered from fever accompanied *with* delirium

Accomplished *in* —His sister is accomplished *in* music.

✓ Accord *to*, *with* —The Governor was unwilling to accord high positions *to* men in whom he found no merits. Our acts should accord *with* our words.

✓ Accordance *with*, but according *to* —I always act in accordance *with* your advice Every one must judge according *to* his own light
अपनी राय के अनुसार

✓ ✕ Account *for* —I cannot account *for* your long silence

✓ Accountable, answerable, responsible *to*, *for* —We are accountable *to* God *for* our actions

✓ Accurate *in* —I was accurate *in* my calculations.

Accused *of*, but charged *with* —The servant was accused *of* theft He was charged *with* theft

Accustomed *to* —"It is hard to drive a bullock not accustomed *to* the yoke"
उन्मुख

✓ Acquainted *with*, but known *to* —Are you acquainted *with* the Magistrate?

Acquiesce *in*, but accede, assent, consent *to* —They did not acquiesce *in* the proposal He did not accede *to* my terms Did you consent *to* the proposal?

Acquitted of —The accused was acquitted *of* the charge of murder

Act for, from, upon, under —The pleader acts *for* his client We often act *from* fear rather than *from* a sense of duty I will act *upon* your advice He is acting *under* the orders of his master

Active in —Antonio was always active *in* doing good to others

Adapted to, for —This book is not adapted *to* my taste The house is not adapted *for* a big family Everybody is expected to be adapted *for* an occupation which is adapted *to* his capacities

Addicted to —The man was addicted *to* gambling

Adequate to, but sufficient for —The supply was not adequate *to* our wants

Adjacent to —The temple is adjacent *to* my garden

Adjourn to —The Magistrate adjourned the case *to* Wednesday

Admit of, to, into —The sentence admits *of* two interpretations The boy was not admitted *to* the examination We were not admitted *into* the office

Advantage of, over —He was taking advantage *of* my weak points We gained an advantage *over* the enemy

Advantageous, profitable to —Trade is highly advantageous *to* a nation

Adverse to —His remarks were adverse *to* our interests

Affection for, but affectionate to —His affection *for* me is very great Naren is affectionate *to* his brothers

Affiliate to, with —Our school is affiliated *to* the Calcutta University I affiliate myself *with* no party

Afflicted with, at —I am afflicted *with* a painful disease My father is afflicted *at* my failure

✓ **Afraid**, apprehensive *of*, but alarmed *at* — The virtuous are not afraid *of* death They were apprehensive *of* a great loss People were alarmed *at* the rumour

✓ **Agree** *with*, *to*, *upon*, *in* — I cannot agree *with* you They do not agree *to* my proposal All the members agreed *upon* that point They all agreed *in* the expediency of English education.

✓ **Agreeable** *to* — This food is not agreeable *to* my taste

✓ **Aim** *at* — The huntsman aimed *at* a deer

Akin *to* — This feeling is akin *to* contempt

Alien *to*, but alienate *from* — Those principles were alien *to* our religion It was an act of ingratitude that alienated me *from* my friend

Alight *from*, *at*, *on* — He alighted *from* a hackney carriage *at* an inn The bird alighted *on* a tree

✓ **Alive** *to*, *with* — The teacher was not alive *to* the consequences of his action The sea is alive *with* ships

Allot *to* — I am content with what has been allotted *to* me

Allude *to* — This alludes *to* the battle of Trafalgar

Alternate *with*, but alternative *to* — Day alternates *with* night This question is alternative *to* that

Amalgamate *into*, *with* — The two schools were amalgamated *into* one The school was amalgamated *with* the college

✓ **Amazed**, astonished, surprised *at*, *by* — We were amazed *at* his extraordinary liberality The juggler astonished us *by* his feats

Ambition *for*, but ambitious *after* or *of* — A contented man has no ambition *for* glory He was ambitious *of* fame

Amenable *to* — That gentleman is not at all amenable *to* reason

Amused at, with —The old man was amused *at* the joke
The children amused themselves *with* pictures

Analogous to —The nature of the boy is analogous *to* that of his father

Analogy to, with, between —The nature of the son bears no analogy *to* that of his father Plants have great analogy *with* animals There is no analogy *between* these two animals

Anchor off —The ship anchored *off* Rangoon

Angry, annoyed, disgusted, displeased, offended, vexed with, for, at —The teacher is angry *with* me *for* disobeying him My father was angry *at* his conduct

Answer to, for, but reply to :—Every man must answer *to* God *for* his own actions What is your answer *to* that question ? Have you given a reply *to* his letter ?

Antidote to, against —The juice of some plants is an antidote *to* snake poison He takes this as an antidote *against* infection

Anxious for, about —The boy is anxious *for* the prize She is anxious *about* the health of her son

Apart from —Let him sit apart *from* other students ✓

Apologise to, for —He apologised *to* the old man *for* having insulted his son

Appeal to, against, for —He appealed *to* the High Court *against* the decision of the Magistrate The widow appealed *to* the public *for* pecuniary help

Appear at, in, before, to, on —The boy appeared *at* or *in* the examination He has been summoned to appear *before* the Magistrate He appears *to* me to be very rich I appeared *in* the scene

Applicable to —This rule is not applicable *to* the case

Apply to, for —He applied *to* the Secretary *for* the post of the second clerk This rule does not apply *to* the case

~~X~~ **Appoint** *to* —He is not fit to be appointed *to* the vacant post

~~X~~ **Appropriate** *to* —The song was appropriate *to* the occasion

~~X~~ **Approve** *of* —No right-minded man can approve *of* your conduct

~~X~~ **Arrived** *at, in* —We arrived *at* Chittagong At last they arrived *in* India We arrived *at* a conclusion after much discussion

~~X~~ **Ashamed** *of*, but **shame** *at, for* —You ought to be ashamed *of* your conduct I feel shame *at or for* his fault

~~X~~ **Ask, beg** *for, of* —I never asked you *for* money I never asked anything *of* you The mouse begged mercy *of* the lion.

Aspiration *after, for* —His aspiration *after* or *for* glory was very great

Aspire *after, to* —There is none that does not aspire *after* fame He aspired *to* the crown of France

Assiduous, diligent *in* —We should be assiduous *in* our studies

Attachment *to* —He could not go to a foreign country owing to his excessive attachment *to* his mother

~~X~~ **Attack** *upon, with, by* :—The English made a sudden attack *upon* the fort I was attacked *with* fever The merchant was attacked *by* robbers

Attendance *upon, at* :—The gentleman had three servants in attendance *upon* him His attendance *at* school is very irregular. [For *attend* see p 166]

Attentive *to*, but **mindful, forgetful** *of* .—The office was always attentive *to* his duties Be mindful *of* your promise

Attribute *to* —They attributed the loss *to* his carelessness,

Authority *for, on, over* —Is there any authority *for* this statement? He is an authority *on* grammar Parents have every authority *over* their children.

Avail *of*, but available *for* —He did not avail himself *of* the opportunity The ticket is available only *for* a single journey

Averse *to* —He is averse *to* hard work

Aversion *to* :—He had a great aversion *to* double dealing

Awake *to* —His sons were fully awake *to* the wants *of* their aged father

Aware, conscious, apprised, cognisant *of* —I was not aware *of* his intentions

Backward, deficient, proficient *in* —I am backward *in* mathematics

Bar, hindrance, impediment, obstacle *to* —His addiction to drinking was a bar *to* his success

Bare *of* —In winter trees are bare *of* leaves

Based *upon* —This rumour is not based *upon* facts ✓

Become *of* —He did not care to know what had become *of* me ✓

Begin *at, with* —Let us begin *at* the first chapter He began *with* the first part.

Beneficial, conducive *to* —Early rising is beneficial *to* health.

Bent, determined, intent, resolved *on or upon* :—He is bent *on* taking revenge I am intent *upon* putting the plan in practice

Bereft, devoid, destitute *of* —This man is bereft *of* common sense

Beset *with* —It was an enterprise beset *with* difficulties ✓

✱ **Bestow upon** —The merchant bestowed two valuable rings *upon* or *on* his guest ✓

✓ **Betake oneself to** —“They betook themselves *to* treaty and submission ”

Betray to, into .—The king was betrayed *to* his enemy by a mendicant He was betrayed *into* the hands of his enemy by his own brother

✱ **Beware of** —Beware *of* a man who talks much ✓

✓ **Bind to, with, about, around** —He bound the cow *to* a post *with* a strong rope Bind this *about* your neck Bind the wreath *around* your brow

✱ **Blessed with, in** —The king was blessed *with* a son The old man was blessed *in* his children

✱ **Blind to, of** —The teacher was blind *to* his own defects The camel was blind *of* one eye

✓ **Blush for, at** —You will have no occasion to blush *for* me. He blushed *at* the conduct of his son

✓ **Boast, brag, boastful, proud of** .—We should not boast *of* our learning. That gentleman is proud *of* his noble birth ✓

✓ **Border on or upon** —The hills border *on* the town His utterances bordered *upon* madness

✱ **Born in, of, to** —I was born *in* India He was born *of* poor parents They were born *to* wealth

✓ **Bound far, in, by** —The ship is bound *for* London I was bound *in* honour to confess everything The parties were bound *by* a contract

Bounded on, by —India is bounded *on* the north *by* the Himalayas

✓ **Busy at, with** —My father is now busy *at* work. The clerk is busy *with* his accounts

✱ **Capable of, but capacity for** —The young man is cap-

able *of* riding seventy miles a day This boy has no capacity *for* mathematics

✓ *Care for, of* — I do not care *for* money You should take special care *of* your health

✓ *Careful of, about, in* — Good boys are careful *of* their books She is very careful *about* her dress We should be careful *in* money matters

✓ *Careless, heedless, regardless of, about* — This boy is very careless *of* his health His brother is careless *about* his reputation Heedless *of* consequences they took the law into their own hands

✓ *Catch, grasp at* — A drowning man catches *at* a straw.
"Alexander grasped *at* universal empire"

✓ *Cause, reason, ground, occasion of, for* — What is the cause *of* your anxiety? Is there any cause *for* your anxiety?

✓ *Caution against, but cautious of* — I cautioned him *against* the danger We should be cautious *of* giving offence to others

✓ *Certain of, but certainty about* — I felt quite certain *of* success There is no certainty *about* his coming

Certify to — I cannot certify *to* his character

✓ *Change for, into* — This is a change *for* the better The mouse was changed *into* a tiger by the sage

Characteristic of, but natural, peculiar to — This habit is characteristic *of* novel writers This is peculiar *to* novel writers

✓ *Charge with, against, to, of, for* — The police charged him *with* murder. The error was charged *against* the clerk The *charges* were charged *to* my account They brought a charge *of* theft against him What will you charge *for* this table?

Cheat, deprive, rob of :—He cheated the poor woman *of* her all He was deprived *of* the throne by his uncle

✕ **Claim** *on* or *upon, to* —“She had a just claim *upon* the gratitude of the country.” I don’t lay any claim *to* the house

Clamorous *for, against* .—The suffering people were clamorous *for* justice The servants were clamorous *against* lower pay

✕ **Clear** *of* —The road was clear *of* all obstructions

✕ **Cleave, cling, adhere** *to* —We should always cleave *to* our own party Every man clings *to* hope as long as he lives

✕ **Close** *to, by, with* —The school is close *to* or *by* my house We closed *with* (=accepted) the offer

✕ **Clothed** *in, with* —The woman was clothed *in* her ‘finest dress The gentleman was clothed *with* shame

✕ **Coincide** *with* —My views do not coincide *with* yours

✕ **Combined** *with*, but **joined** *to* or *with* —Genius combined *with* wealth can make the impossible possible

✕ **Commence** *on, with* —The examination will commence *on* Monday *with* English

Commensurate *with* —Such a poor salary is not commensurate *with* his abilities

Compete *with, for* —He had to compete *with* several scholars *for* the gold medal

✕ **Compassion, pity** *for, on* —He showed no compassion *for* me in my troubles I took pity *on* the poor blind man

Compatible *with* —Those laws are not compatible *with* public safety

✕ **Competent, fit, far, but deserving, worthy** *of* —He is not competent or fit *for* the post This orphan is deserving *of* your kindness The author of the book is worthy *of* praise

Complain *against, to, of* —He complained *against* me *to* the Head master They always complain *of* your conduct

Complaint *against, about* :—Robert made a complaint *against* John *about* some debt

Comply *with* —He did not comply *with* my request

Concerned *about, for, in* —I am much concerned (anxious) *about* your progress The mother was concerned *for* the safety of her son He was not concerned (interested) *in* the affair

Concur *with, in* —I concur *with* him *in* his decision.

Condole *with, in* —My friends condoled *with* me *in* my bereavement

Confide *in, to*, **Confidence** *in*, but **Confident** *of* —The queen confided *in* the honour of her ministers She was unwilling to confide the secret *to* a stranger The father had no confidence *in* his dishonest son I was confident *of* success

Confined *in, to* —The servant was confined *in* prison for theft I was confined *to* (my) bed by a severe attack of gout

Conform *to, with* —Students must conform *to* the rules of the school My views do not conform *with* yours

Conformity *to, with* —I did this in conformity *to* the rules of the institution In conformity *with* the advice of my father, I did not appear at the examination

Congenial *to* —This work is not at all congenial *to* my taste

Congratulate *on* —I congratulate you *on* your success at the examination

Connive, Connivance, wink *at* —The father's connivance *at* the follies of his son was the cause of his ruin No teacher should connive or wink *at* the faults of his pupils

Consequent upon, but subsequent to —The famine was consequent *upon* the failure of crops This refers to a event subsequent *to* the downfall of the Moghul empire

Consideration for, of —They made no consideration *for* the poor widow In consideration *of* his tender age, the Judge discharged him with a warning

Conspicuous for, by —The gentleman was conspicuous *for* his honesty He was conspicuous *by* his absence

Contemporary with, of —Akbar was contemporary (adj) *with* Queen Elizabeth Akbar was a contemporary (noun) *of* Queen Elizabeth

Contend with, for, against —They had to contend *with* one another *for* the prize He had to contend *against* a large number of enemies

Contiguous to —These two districts are contiguous *to* each other.

Contrary to —Results often turn out contrary *to* one's expectations

Contrast between, to, with —There is a great contrast *between* the two brothers The character of the son is a great contrast *to* that of his father Contrast (verb) the character of Sakuntala *with* that of Ratnavali

Convenient to, for —This rule will be convenient *to* or *for* the students It will not be convenient *for* them to attend the meeting

Conversant with, but versed in —The Secretary is thoroughly conversant *with* English He was versed *in* state affairs

Converted to, into —His uncle was converted *to* Christianity Water is converted *into* ice.

Convicted of —The accused was convicted *of* murder

Convinced of —The teacher was convinced *of* his mistake

✓ **Count upon** —He counted much *upon* your help

Covetous of, but eager for —I am not covetous *of* wealth He was eager *for* praise

Crave for, after —Everybody craves *for* or *after* happiness.

Craving for —He has no craving *for* glory

Credited to, with. —The victory was credited *to* the young General The young General was credited *with* the victory

✗ **Cure of** —The doctor cured the boy *of* his madness \

Dead, deaf to —The young man is dead *to* all sense of shame The rich are generally deaf *to* the entreaties of the poor

✓ **Dear to, but popular with** —The teacher was dear *to* his students The king was popular *with* his subjects

Debar, deter, dissuade, hinder, preclude, prohibit from —The boy was debarred *from* appearing at the examination Nothing can deter me *from* doing the right He dissuaded me *from* going

✗ **Decide on, against** —I have not yet decided *on* the course I should take The case has been decided *against* you

Decision of, on —The decision *of* the dispute is left to my brother He has not yet given his decision *on* the matter

✗ **Delight in, but delighted with** —The queen delights *in* music The king was delighted *with* the scenery

✗ **Demand of, for** —Teachers demand *of* their pupils obedience, respect and love There is a great demand (noun) *for* the book

✓ **Dependent on, independent of** —The woman was dependent *on* her brother for support She is now independent *of* his help

Derive *from* —I derive much pleasure *from* riding But
—He takes pleasure *in* riding

Descended *from*, but descendant *of* —They are descended *from* Sivaji They are descendants *of* Sivaji

Descriptive, expressive, illustrative *of* —This is a book descriptive *of* the mountains of Asia.

Design *for, upon* —This book is designed *for* Matriculation students He had a design (noun) *upon* the life of his nephew

Desire *for*, desirous *of* —The writer had a strong desire *for* fame He is desirous *of* converting his property into gold

Despair *of*, but hope *for* —We should never despair *of* success They hoped *for* victory.

Destined *for, to* —John is destined *for* the bar Satan is destined *to* eternal woe

Destructive *of, to* —Excessive mental exercise is destructive *of* health Evil examples are destructive *to* the morals of the youth —Webster.

Detrimental, hurtful, injurious *to*:—Smoking is detrimental *to* health

Deviate *from* —We should on no account deviate *from* the path of virtue

Devolve *on* or *upon* —On the death of his father, the charge of his education devolved *on* his mother.

Devoted *to* —The boy devoted his days and nights *to* study He was devoted *to* his master

Dexterous, expert, skilful *at, in* —This boy is very dexterous *at* or *in* drawing The girl is skilful *at* the organ He is skilful *in* his profession

Differ *from, in with, on* —They differed *from* each other *in* disposition I differ *with* you *on* that point

Difference between —There is a great difference *between* these two things.

Different from, but **indifferent to** —His views are different *from* mine One who loves right cannot be indifferent *to* wrong or wrong doing —Smiles

Disappointed of, in, at —The boy was disappointed *of* the prize (not obtained) The hunter was disappointed *in* his game (obtained, but it did not answer his expectations) The girl was disappointed *at* the reply he gave her

Discourage from, but **encourage to** —He discouraged me *from* appearing at the examination He encouraged me *to* fresh deeds of benevolence

Dislike to, but **liking for** —My brother has a dislike *to* mathematics He has a liking *for* you

Dispense with, to —My employer has dispensed *with* my services God dispenses equal justice *to* us all

Dispose of —He has disposed *of* his property

Disqualified for, from —You are disqualified *for* the post. The boy has been disqualified *from* appearing at the examination

Divide in, into, between, among —Divide the apple *in* half Divide the apple *into* two parts He divided the property *between* his two sons The three brothers divided the property *among* themselves

Dull at, of —This boy is dull *at* mathematics He is dull *of* hearing

Duty to, towards, by —We should be mindful of our duties *to* or *towards* our parents I have done my duty *by* him

Eager for, in —He was eager *for* fame His brother was very eager *in* the pursuit of knowledge

Easy *of, in, about* —The king was easy *of* access She was very easy *in* mind *about* her son's absence

Embark *on, in* —We embarked *on* board a vessel He intended to embark *in* a business.

Empty *of* —The box is empty *of* its contents

Encroach *on or upon* —We should not encroach *upon* the rights of our neighbours.

Endeavour *at, after* —His endeavours *at* reform ended in failure. All of his endeavours *after* happiness were fruitless

Engaged *in, to* —They were then engaged *in* serious conversation. The girl was engaged *to* a young man of high birth

Enjoin *on or upon* —My father enjoins *upon* me to make this the aim of my life

Enlist *in* —He was enlisted *in* the army

Enmity *with*, but **enemy** *to* —This man is at open enmity *with* my father. He is not a friend, but an enemy *to* you

Entrust *with, to* —I cannot entrust my servant *with* money I cannot entrust money *to* my servant.

Envy *at*, but **envious** *of* .—We should not feel envy *at* the success of others Don't be envious *of* the good fortune of your neighbours.

Equal *to*, but **equality** *with* —He is not equal *to* the work of superintending On the day of judgment, a poor beggar may be placed on a footing of equality *with* a sovereign

Equivalent *for, to* —Give a Sanskrit equivalent (noun) *for* this word The sum was equivalent (adj) *to* five thousand pounds

Exact *from, in* —He exacted (verb) money *from* his debtors with much severity My master is exact (adj) *in* payment

HIDDEN TREASURY

Exception *to*, **excepted** *from*, but **make an exception** *of* —This is an exception *to* the general rule He was excepted *from* punishment I hope you will make an exception *of* my brother's case

Exchange *with, for* —Will you exchange your clock *with* me *for* my watch ?

Excluded *from*, but **exclusive** *of* —My name was excluded *from* the list This is the price of the book exclusive *of* postage

Excuse *for, from* —There is no excuse *for* your conduct He was excused *from* paying the fine.

Experience *of* a thing, but **experience** *in* doing something —He had experience *of* diseases, but no experience *in* curing them

Expostulate *with, on* —I do not like to expostulate *with* you *on* the injustice of your act

Extravagant *in*, but **economical, prodigal** *of* —Don't be extravagant *in* your expenditure Be economical *of* your time He was prodigal *of* his expenditure

Exult *in, over* :—The people of England exulted *in* the victory We should not exult *over* a fallen enemy

Fail *of* a purpose, but **fail** *in* an attempt —A weak-minded man fails *of* his purpose when he fails *in* his first attempt

Faithful, faithless, disloyal, obedient *to* —The servant was faithful *to* his master He has proved faithless *to* his country

False *to*, but **true** *to, of* —Don't be false *to* your promises He was true *to* his word What is true *of* the individual is true *of* the intellectual development of the species —Huxley

Familiar *with, to* —I was familiar *with* him. He is familiar *with* Sanskrit His face is familiar *to* me

Favourable to, for, but favoured with —His remarks are not favourable *to* our interests The time was not favourable *for* our action I have not yet been favoured *with* a reply to my letter

Feed on, with —Some birds feed (intrans) *on* flesh He fed (trans) us *with* sweets

Fertile in —England is fertile *in* resources

Fire at, on, with —He fired *at* a man or *at* a bird The police had to fire *on* the mob. The boy was fired *with* zeal

Fond of, but fondness for —The cat is very fond *of* fish He has a fondness *for* riding

Foreign to —This is foreign *to* our purpose

Founded on or upon, but foundation in —The rumour was not founded *upon* facts His story has no foundation *in* truth

Free from, of, but rid of —The miller was entirely free *from* anxieties, You will get the paper free *of* charge They wish to get rid *of* you, I am rid *of* fever

Frown, smile at, upon —He always frowns or smiles *at* me Fortune frowned *upon* him May Fortunes smile *upon* you !

Fruitful of, in —England is fruitful *of* wise and great men The age was fruitful *in* great deeds

Fruitless of :—Those measures were fruitless *of* results

Full of, but filled with —His heart was full *of* joy My heart was filled *with* pity for them

Furnish, supply to, with —He furnished food *to* the hungry. He furnished me *with* clothes Books were supplied *to* them. The boy was supplied *with* books

Gaze at, on or upon —The child is gazing *at* the moon The poet was gazing *upon* the scenery of the hill

Genius for, in —He has genius *for* mathematics He is a genius *in* mathematics

Glad at, of —I am glad *at* your success I am glad *of* your assistance in this undertaking

Glance at, over —The girl glanced *at* the poet from her cottage A glance *at* the contents will show that the book is worth reading Please let me glance *over* the paper

Glory in —He glories *in* acts of inhumanity

Good for, at—This lad is good *for* nothing He is good *at* arithmetic

Grateful, thankful to, for —I am grateful *to* him *for* the kindness he has shown me

Greediness for or after, but greedy of or after —He was hated by all good men on account of his greediness *for* or *after* money The man was greedy *of* or *after* fame

Grief, grieve at, for —The father was overwhelmed with grief *at* the loss of his only child The mother was afflicted with grief *for* her lost son Do not grieve *at* or *for* the loss The woman grieves *for* (or *over*) her dead son

Grumble at —We should not grumble *at* our lot

Guard from, against —May God guard you *from* harm! We should guard ourselves *against* temptations

Guess at —These boys guess *at* their answers

Guilty, innocent of —He was guilty *of* theft I am quite innocent *of* the offence

Hanker after —He hankers *after* riches

Hard by, of, on or upon —There is a temple hard *by* the school The boy is hard *of* hearing The teacher is very hard *upon* his pupils

Hardened against —The widow was hardened *against* misfortunes

Hatred for, of —My hatred *for* or *of* the woman was never lessened He has a great hatred *of* falsehood

Hear of, from —I heard *of* your success *from* a gentleman

✓ **Hesitate at** —You have no reason to hesitate *at* this
Hinge on or upon —The whole matter hinges *on* this point

✓ **Hope of, for, but hopeful of** —There is no hope *of* his recovery They hoped *for* better results They were all along hopeful *of* victory.

✓ **Hostile to** —Every sensible man is hostile *to* sudden changes

Hover about, over —Pick-pockets are hovering *about* the place. Birds are hovering *over* their nests

Identical with —His views are identical *with* mine

✓ **Ignorant of** —I am ignorant *of* Sanskrit.

✓ **Ill of or with** —The boy is ill *of* or *with* fever.

Impart to —She imparted the secret *to* her husband

✓ **Impatient of, for, at** —These boys are impatient *of* control They are impatient *for* food. We are impatient *at* his delay.

✓ **Imperative on or upon** —It is imperative *on* students that they should obey their teachers

Implicated in —His sons were implicated *in* the conspiracy

Impose on or upon —A new tax was imposed *upon* the subjects He imposes *on* (deceives) every one who confides in him

Impress on, with —I impressed *on* him the necessity of female education I impressed him *with* the necessity of female education.

Incentive to —Love of money is a great incentive *to* industry

Include in, but inclusive of —The book was not included *in* the list This is the price of the book inclusive *of* postage.

Inconsistent *with, in* —Our acts should not be inconsistent *with* our words He is inconsistent *in* his action.

Inculcate *upon* —The teacher inculcated *upon* his students the love of truthfulness

Incumbent *on* —It is incumbent *on* us to obey the laws

Indulge *in, with*, but **indulgent** *to* —He indulges *in* wine He indulges himself *with* wine No father should be indulgent *to* his children

Inferior, superior *to* —As regards climate, Japan is inferior *to* India

Infested *with* —The house was infested *with* rats

Inflict *on or upon* :—The teacher inflicted punishment *on* all the students of the class

Influence *over, with, on* —The king has some influence *over* Parliament He had great influence *with* the king Examples exercise great influence *on* the formation of our character

Inform *of against* —I informed him *of* his father's illness He informed the Magistrate *against* your brother

Inquire *of, about, into, after* —He inquired *of* Jadu Babu *about* the marriage of his son The Inspector inquired *into* the matter There is none to inquire *after* my health

Insensible and sensitive *to*, but **sensible** *of* —We should not be insensible *to* shame He is very sensitive *to* noise She is always sensible *of* your kindness

Insist *on*, but **persist** *in* —The students insisted *on* being examined without delay The boy persisted *in* reading novels

Interfere *with, in* —Do not interfere *with* any man *in* his private affairs

Intimate *with, to* —These two gentlemen are very intimate (adj) *with* each other He intimated (verb) this *to* my father

✓ Introduce *to, into* —Please introduce him *to* the Magistrate He introduced me *into* the drawing-room

Involve *in* —He is involved *in* debt

Irrelevant *to* —Your arguments are irrelevant *to* the subject under discussion.

Irrespective *of* —He administers justice irrespective *of* colour or creed. ✕

✓ Jealous *of* —You should not be jealous *of* his success

✓ Jest *at* —We should not jest *at* sacred things

✕ Join *with, in, to* —He is willing to join *with* us *in* this undertaking Join this point *to* that

✕ Judge *of, by* —We should not judge *of* things *by* appearances.

✓ Jump *at, to* —I had the good sense not to jump *at* the offer The members of the committee did not jump *to* a conclusion all at once

✕ Kick *at, against* —The horse kicked *at* the old man It is foolishness on his part to kick *against* authority

✕ Know *about, of*, but known *to, for, by* —Do you know anything *about* his character? I know *of* a man who is conversant with ten languages He was known *to* all *for* his charity. A tree is known *by* its fruits

✕ Labour *under, for* —He laboured *under* a great misapprehension. We laboured hard *for* the examination

✕ Laden *with* —The ship was laden *with* salt

✓ Lame *of* —The servant was lame *of* one leg

✓ Lavish *in, of, on* —Do not be lavish *in* your expenditure He was very lavish (adj) *of* money She lavished (verb) praises *on* the young General

✓ Lean *against, on, to* —The boy leaned *against* a lamp-post The old man was leaning *on* a staff The Magistrate leaned *to* the side of the poor widow

✓ **Lend** *at, on* —He lent money *at* high interest to Christian merchants. I lend money *on* good security

✓ **Level** *at, with* —He levelled his gun *at* a dog. Several houses were levelled *with* the ground

Liable *to, for* —You will be liable *to* 'punishment *for* violating the rule

Libel *on, against* —The anonymous letter was a libel *on* the Emperor. He was prosecuted for writing a libel *against* the character of the Superintendent

Liberal *of, to* —He is liberal *of* advice. Be liberal *to* the poor

✓ **Long** *for* or *after* —He longs *for* or *after* fame

✓ **Lord** *of, over* —I am the lord (noun) *of* this house. He lords (verb) *over* a people

✓ **Lost** *in, to* —He is lost *in* his meditation. This youth is lost *to* all sense of honour

✓ **Made** *of* —This body is made *of* earth

✓ **Marry** *to, into* —He married his daughter *to* the son of a Zemindar. He wishes to marry *into* a noble family

✓ **Mistaken** *for, in* —The shadow was mistaken *for* a man. You are mistaken *in* your conclusion

✓ **Moved** *to, with, at, by* —I was moved *to* tears (or, moved *with* pity) *at* the sight of the famine-stricken people. He was moved *by* the entreaties of the poor girl

✓ **Murmur** *at, against* —We should not murmur *at* or *against* the arrangements. Don't murmur *against* God

✓ **Necessary** *for, to* —Honest diligence is necessary *for* success. Sleep is necessary *to* health

✓ **Necessity** *for, of* —At that time I had no necessity *for* the book. I am under the painful necessity *of* bringing a suit against him

✓ **Need** *of, for, but needful for* —I am in need *of* your

help I have no need *for* your help. Money is needful *for* our wants

Neglectful *of*, but negligent *of*, *in* —We should not be neglectful *of* our old parents The servant is always negligent *of* his duties Don't be negligent *in* your business

~~✗~~ Object *to* —I object *to* your going out without my permission

Obligatory *on*, but obliged *to*, *for* —It is obligatory *on* students to obey the rules of the school I am obliged *to* you *for* your kind offer

Observant *of* —They are very observant *of* religious rites

Occupied *with*, *in* —He was occupied *with* his own affairs I am occupied *in* reading a novel

~~✗~~ Offence *against*, *at*, but offend *against* —This is an offence *against* morality. He took offence *at* your remark We have offended *against* the Lord already —Bible

Offended *with*, *at*, but offensive *to* —He was offended *with* you I am offended *at* his rude behaviour This food is offensive *to* my stomach.

Officiate *for*, *in* —The Assistant Head Master is officiating *for* the Head Master He is officiating *in* my post

~~✗~~ Open *to* —The library is open *to* the public

Originate *in*, *with* —These suits originated *in* a quarrel That scheme originated *with* Vidyasagar

| Parallel *to*, *with* —These lines are parallel *to* one another The laws of a country should run parallel *with* the laws of morality

Partake *of* —I partook *of* some refreshments with my companions

Partial *to*, but Partiality *for*, *to* —Teachers are generally partial *to* meritorious boys. The teacher had no partiality

for a student of his own taste The Judge never showed partiality *to* any particular party

Participate with in —He participated *with* me *in* my sufferings

Particular in, on —She was very particular *in* her dress. She was particular *on* that point

Pass for, over, by —He passes *for* a wise man in the village The teacher passed *over* some pages of the book A poor Brahmin was passing *by* the street

Patient of, in —The man is patient *of* hardship. He is patient *in* bearing misfortunes

Perish by, with —They perished *by* their own swords The old woman perished *with* hunger

Piety towards, but pity for —A sinner has no piety *towards* God I feel pity *for* the poor

Play at, on —The boys are playing *at* cards or *at* cricket. He is playing *on* a harmonium

Pleased with, at —The Superintendent is pleased *with* you The Inspector is pleased *with* his mode of teaching I am pleased *at* his behaviour

Point at, to —The girl pointed *at* a blind man I pointed *out to* him that his addiction to gambling would be the cause of his ruin

Polite in, to —He is very polite *in* his manners We should be polite *to* strangers

Poor, rich in —He is poor *in* courage Our life should be rich *in* glorious deeds

Possessed of, with —Shylock was possessed *of* immense wealth Illiterate people are generally possessed *with* many absurd notions.

Prefer, preferable to, but preference for, to —I prefer rice *to* bread. Death is preferable *to* dishonour I have

a preference *for* teachership I choose this umbrella in preference *to* the other -

Prejudice *against*, but **prejudicial** *to* —He has no prejudice *against* a Mahomedan A bad feeling between the students and the teachers is prejudicial *to* the interests of an institution.

Prepare *for*, *against*, but **preparatory** *to* —We are preparing *for* the examination We should prepare *against* disaster This is preparatory *to* the Matriculation class

Present *to*, *with* —Portia presented a fine ring *to* Bassanio She presented Bassanio *with* a fine ring

Preside *at*, *over* —Who will preside *at* the meeting? The Viceroy has kindly consented to preside *over* the meeting

Pretend, **pretension** *to* —The teacher pretends *to* a knowledge of Sanskrit. I have no pretension *to* any knowledge of astronomy

Pretext *for* —This is only a pretext *for* being late.

Preventive *to*, *of* —This medicine is preventive (adj) *to* fever This is a preventive (noun) *of* fever.

Previous *to* —I shall see you once more previous *to* my departure

Prey *to*, *on* or *upon* —For some time my mind was a prey (noun) *to* various sorts of anxieties The grief has been preying (verb) *on* her mind

Pride *in*, *on*, but **proud** *of* —He had no pride *in* his wealth The father prides *in* his son. He prides himself *upon* his skill We should not be proud *of* our high position

Proceed *with*, *to*, *against* —The two brothers proceeded *with* (continued) the business They proceeded *to* China I proceeded *against* (prosecuted) him in a court of justice.

Productive *of* —Female education will be productive *of* much good *to* the nation

Profit by, but **Profitable to** —What have you profited *by* his instruction ? This business will not be very profitable *to* us.

Profuse of, *in* —The garden was profuse *of* flowers He was profuse *in* his offers

Progress in —His progress *in* Sanskrit is not satisfactory

Prompt in, *by* —The boy was prompt (adj) *in* his answers. He was prompted *by* selfish motives in acting thus

Prone to —These boys are prone *to* idleness

Proof of, *against* —There is no proof (noun) *of* his guilt. This cloth is proof (adj) *against* fire

Protect from, *against* —May God protect you *from* harm We will protect you *against* your enemy

Protest against —The students protested *against* the injustice of the decision

Provident of, but **provision for** :—We should be provident *of* our money. Vidyasagar made provisions *for* a large number of poor students.

Provoke to, but **provocation for** —He provoked the boys *to* anger There was no provocation *for* assault.

Pursuance of, but **pursuant to** —In pursuance *of* his request, I went to the station I did this pursuant *to* the instructions of my father

Qualified for —He is not qualified *for* the post

Quarrel between, *with*, *over* —There was a quarrel *between* them The brothers are quarrelling *with* one another *over* a plot of land

Quick at, *of* —The boy is quick *at* figures He is quick *of* understanding

Rail at, *against* —People rail *at* him for his follies He rails *against* the institution in which he has been taught.

Ready *for, at, in, with*.—Are you ready *for* the examination? The clerk is ready *at* accounts The boy is ready *in* his answers. Are you ready *with* your papers?

Reckon *on or upon* —I reckoned much *on* his help

Reconcile *to, with* :—We should learn to reconcile ourselves *to* our fate. The two friends were soon reconciled *with* each other

Regard *for*, but *regardful, regardless, disregard of* —I have no regard *for* a dishonest man. He was not at all regardful *of* my interests Don't be so regardless *of* your own safety The driver's disregard *of* the signal resulted in an accident

Rejoice *at, in, over* —Nobody else rejoiced *at* your success more than your mother

Relieve *from, of* —The medicine has relieved me *from* or *of* pain. He has been relieved *from* service

Remind *of* —Please remind me *of* this to-morrow

Remonstrate *with, against* :—I remonstrated *with* him *against* his conduct

Repent *of*, but *repentance for* —You should repent *of* the offence you have committed Repentance *for* sins committed purifies the soul

Resort *to* —I was compelled to resort *to* violence

Respect *for*, but *respectful to or towards* —I have no respect *for* him We should be respectful *to* or *towards* our superiors.

Respond *to* —Nobody responded *to* my call

Rest *on, with* —Our success rests *on* our honest diligence. The final decision of the case rests with the Director of Public Instruction

Result *of, from, in* —The result (noun) *of* the examina-

tion has not yet been out. Pleasure and peace can result only *from* a pious life. The accident resulted *in* the death of five men.

Retire from, on, into, to —He has retired *from* service *on* a pension of fifty rupees. He has retired *into* private life. Let us retire *to* bed.

Revel in —“The Nawab was revelling *in* fancied security at Murshidabad.”

Revenge on, for —He was determined to revenge himself *on* the priest *for* betraying his son into the hands of his enemy.

Sanguine of, in —I am sanguine *of* success. Young men are generally very sanguine *in* their expectations.

Satisfactory to, but satisfied with, of —His conduct is not satisfactory *to* me. I am not at all satisfied *with* his conduct. I am satisfied (=convinced) *of* his guilt.

Search for, after, of, into :—Search *for* the animal that has gone astray. All men search *for* or *after* pleasure. He went to France in search *of* his younger brother. The police searched *into* the particulars.

Seek for or after —We all seek *for* or *after* wealth.

Short of —I am short *of* funds.

Sick, weary of —I am sick *of* (=tired of) an idle life.

Slave to, of —No man should be a slave *to* his passions. No man should be the slave *of* his passions.

Slow of, at, in —The member is slow *of* speech. He is slow *at* work. It is slow *in* motion.

Stare at, in —We should not stare *at* a stranger. Poverty started him *in* the face.

Stick to, at, in —A man who does not stick *to* his principles can never prosper. He sticks *at* nothing to gain his ends. The carriage stuck *in* the mud.

Solicit for, but solicitous of —The poor man solicited him *for* help He was solicitous *of* a reply

Subject of, for, to —This is the subject *of* enquiry. This is the subject *for* enquiry (=the enquiry has not yet begun) Everything is subject *to* decay

Succeed in, to —I succeeded at last *in* the undertaking with great difficulty She succeeded *to* the crown of England

Suffer from, for —The boy is suffering *from* fever. You must suffer *for* the wrong you have done

Suitable to, for —The language was not suitable *to* the subject This ring is not suitable *for* presentation

Suited to, for —The book is not suited *to* our taste This old man is not suited *for* the post

Sure of, but surety for —They were sure *of* success Who will stand surety *for* you ?

Swift of —The girl was as swift *of* foot as a wild roe

Sympathise with, in, but sympathy for, with, in —I have no friend to sympathise *with* me *in* my troubles He showed no sympathy *for* or *with* me *in* my troubles

Synonym for, but synonymous with —This word is a synonym *for* foolishness. These two words are not synonymous *with* each other

Taste for, of —I have no taste *for* mathematics You have not yet had a taste *of* misery

Thirst for —His thirst *for* knowledge is very great. They thirst *for* revenge

Tired of, with —I am tired *of* giving him advice. He has been tired *with* toil

Touch at, on or upon —The ship touched *at* Viragapatam The speaker did not touch *upon* these points

Treat of, with, to —This book treats *of* various subjects. Commissioners were appointed to treat *with* (=to negotiate)

with) him The invited gentlemen were treated *to* a dinner

Trespass against, on, in —You should not trespass *against* the rules of the club One of your cows has trespassed *on* my field I will not trespass long *on* your valuable time He was prosecuted for trespassing *in* my house

Triumph over —Conscience should triumph *over* affection

Trust in, to, with, but distrust of —Let us trust *in* God I have no trust (noun) *in* his honesty Trust *to* (=depend on) the advice of your father I cannot trust the servant *with* money. The old man's distrust *of* his own children was one of the main causes of his unhappiness

Tyrannize over —The Zemindar tyrannized *over* his tenants

Use of, in, for —What is the use *of* that book ? There is no use *in* buying that book We have no use *for* this book

Used to —He is used *to* (=accustomed to) hard labour

Useful to, for —This book will be useful *to* us *for* reference

Victim to, of —He was a victim *to* the oppression of the tyrant He was the victim *of* the oppression of the tyrant

Vote against, for —Twenty members voted *for* the motion and five *against* it

Wait for, at, on, upon —I shall wait *for* you *at* the station. Five servants wait *upon* (=attend) him at table

Want of, but wanting in —I could not start the business *for* want *of* money The people of this district are wanting *in* courage

Warn of, against —I warned him *of* the danger Did I not warn you *against* your fault ? I warned him *against* pick-pockets.

✓ Welcome *to* — You are welcome *to* my house You are welcome *to* the use of my library

✓ Wrapped *in* — Everything regarding him is wrapped *in* mystery.

QUESTIONS

1 Complete the following sentences by inserting one word in each of the blank spaces — (C U 1901)

(a) This stick differs——that——length——two feet

(b) The difference——six and eight is equal to the excess of four ~~but~~ two

(c) He is indifferent alike——praise and——

(a) My horse, though inferior——yours, seems first——in comparison——his

(e) Why do you not avail——of the assistance he has——you ?

(f) He is so impatient——good advice that I despair——making any impression——him

(g) I tried to persuade him to——my example, but he insisted——taking his own——

(h) He is 'so bent——carrying——his purpose——it is useless to try to dissuade him——doing so

Ans (a) This stick differs *from* that *in* length *by* two feet

(b) The difference *between* six and eight is equal to the excess of four *over* two.

(c) He is indifferent alike *to* praise and *blame*

(d) My horse, though inferior *to* yours, seems first *rate* in comparison *with* his.

(e) Why do you not avail *yourself* of the assistance he has *promised* you ?

(f) He is so impatient *of* good advice that I despair *of* making any impression *on* him.

(g) I tried to persuade him to *follow* my example, but he insisted *on* taking his own *course*

(h) He is so bent *upon* carrying *out* his purpose *that* it is useless to try to dissuade him *from* doing so

2 Insert an appropriate preposition in each of the following blanks — (C U 1905)

He landed——Portsmouth, he is amenable——reason, is there any authority——this statement? This is a change——the better, he is frugal——his habits, heedless——consequences he went on, he was hopeful——recovery, he fell a victim——cholera, his thirst——money could never be satisfied

Ans He landed *at* Portsmouth, he is amenable *to* reason, is there any authority *for* this statement? This is a change *for* the better, he is frugal *in* his habits, heedless *of* consequences he went on, he was hopeful *of* recovery, he fell a victim *to* cholera, his thirst *for* money could never be satisfied

3 Insert an appropriate preposition in each of the following blanks — (C U 1906)

(a) I ought to apologise——the committee——intruding——them the opinion—an inexperienced person when they are engaged——the discussion——a question as complicated as any that ever came——Parliament.

(b) What cat is averse——fish? I was thoroughly disgusted——his treatment——me A drowning man catches——a straw The thing is tainted——its source This is a great incentive——industry.

Ans (a) I ought to apologise *to* the committee *for* intruding *upon* them the opinion *of* an inexperienced person when they are engaged *in* the discussion *of* a question as complicated as any that ever came *before* Parliament

(b) What cat is averse *to* fish? I was thoroughly disgusted *at* his treatment *of* me A drowning man catches *at* a straw The thing is tainted *at* its source This is a great incentive *to* industry

4 Insert an appropriate preposition in each of the following blanks — (C. U 1907)

He is destined—the Bar His face is familiar—me
I have done my duty—him. He lends money—good
security Is there any cause—this delay? We must pro-
vide—this risk He is negligent—his business I am
tired—my exertions

Ans He is destined *for* the Bar His face is familiar *to*
me I have done my duty *by* him He lends money *on* good
security Is there any cause *for* this delay? We must pro-
vide *against* this risk He is negligent *in* his business I am
tired *with* my exertions

5 Insert prepositions in each of the following blanks — (C U 1908)

You must apologise—him—what you have done, even
though the act was not done—any bad intention A man
—honour will adhere—his convictions, and act—a
sense—duty, even if men rail—him and think him weak
—understanding and wanting—common sense

Ans You must apologise *to* him *for* what you have done,
even though the act was not done *from* any bad intention
A man *of* honour will adhere *to* his convictions, and act *from*
a sense *of* duty, even if men rail *at* him and think him weak
of understanding and wanting *in* common sense,

6 Fill up the following blanks — (C U 1910)

(a) The cup was—my lips when he dashed it—the
ground in obedience—your order

(b) How can I go—with the work?

(c) I have reason——being conscious—that

(d) I did rely——his support, and I attached value——
his acts

Ans (a) The cup was *near* my lips when he dashed it
on the ground in obedience *to* your order

(b) How can I go *on* with the work ?

(c) I have reasons *for* being conscious *of* that

(d) I did rely *on* his support, and I attached value *to* his
acts

7 Fill up the following blanks — (C U 1911)

(a) The young man was angry——me for pointing——
him that his addiction——gambling would be the cause——
his ruin

(b) When my employer dispensed——my services, I dis-
posed——my furniture, was reconciled——my fate and set——
a grocer's shop

(c) The messenger asked the station master——the train
was late,——it would arrive,——many passengers it carried
and——its average speed was

Ans (a) The young man was angry *with* me for pointing
out to him that his addiction *to* gambling would be the cause
of his ruin

(b) When my employer dispensed *with* my services, I
disposed *of* my furniture, was reconciled *to* my fate and set *up*
a grocer's shop

(c) The messenger asked the station master *why* the train
was late, *when* it would arrive, *how* many passengers it carried
and *what* its average speed was

8 Insert an appropriate word in each of the following
blanks — (C U 1913)

(a) Filled——pity for them, he swore so to avenge them
tyrant——all Greece should ring——his punishment

(b) No more——this We have had enough——it Be
——good cheer, for you are dear——me

Ans (a) Filled *with* pity for them, he swore so to
avenge them *on* the tyrant *that* all Greece should ring *with*
his punishment

(b) No more *of* this We have had enough *of* it Be
of good cheer, for you are dear *to* me

9 Construct short sentences, using the right preposition
after any four of the following words — (C U 1914)

Appeal, disappointed, fruitful, inquire, proceed, suitable

10 Fill up the blanks in any four of the following —
(C. U 1916)

I am confident——success Time is——our side I am
sensible——our difficulties, but I have confidence——the future.
Our party will be borne——an easy victory This is my view
in regard——your proposal

Ans I am confident——*of* success. Time is *on* our side
I am sensible *of* our difficulties, but I have confidence *in* the
future Our party will be borne *to* an easy victory This
is my view in regard *to* your proposal

11 Construct short sentences using an appropriate pre-
position after any *three* of the following — (C U 1917)

Congenial, eligible, prodigal, superior.

12 Construct short sentences using an appropriate pre-
position after any *three* of the following — (C. U 1918)

Acceptable, fertile, productive, enlist

CHAPTER XXII

VARIOUS USES OF PREPOSITIONS

Q & A Give various uses of the following prepositions with illustrative phrases or sentences —

ABOUT

About is used to denote —

- (1) *Around* — Wrap it *about* your neck
- (2) *Close to, on the verge of* — It is *about* four o'clock
- (3) *Concerning* — I know nothing *about* the clock

ABOVE

Above is used to denote —

- (1) *Beyond* — Don't live *above* your means
- (2) *Higher in place* — Birds fly *above* the earth
- (3) *More than* — The subscriptions came to *above* Rs 100
- (4) *Superior to* — Jadu is *above* me in the class

AFTER.

After is used to denote —

- (1) *Behind* — He came *after* me
- (2) *In quest of* — He hankers *after* wealth
- (3) *In imitation of, in accordance with* — The school was named *after* his father This is a book *after* my heart
- (4) *Concerning* — He inquired *after* my health
- (5) *In spite of what has gone before* — He worked hard *at after* all failed in the examination

AGAINST.

✓ *Against* is used to denote —

(1) *In opposition to* —He always acts *against* his own interests

(2) *In provision for* —Wise men lay up something *against* a rainy day

(3) *Opposite to* —The sum was put *against* his name

AT

✓ *At* is used to denote —

(1) *Place* —He lives *at* Sitakunda

(2) *Time* —I shall call on you *at* 12 o'clock

(3) *Value* —The book is valued *at* Rs 2

(4) *Degree* —He lends money *at* a high rate of interest

(5) *Agency* —I suffered much *at* their hands

(6) *State, occupation* —He is *at* fault He is playing *at* cards

(7) *Consequence or dependence* —I came *at* your call

(8) *Direction* —The loar ran *at* the hunter

BY (C U 1909)

✓ *By* is used to denote —

(1) *Proximity in place or time* —She sat *by* her mother
I shall pay the money *by* the end of this month

(2) *Agency, instrumentality* —The cow was killed *by* a tiger
He took possession of the land *by* force

(3) *Measure* —He sells rice *by* seers

(4) *Manner* —He paid the money *by* instalments

(5) *Distribution* —Go one *by* one

(6) *Adjuration* —He swore *by* Heaven

(7) *According to* —It is three *by* my clock

FOR (C U 1887)

✓ *For* is used to denote —

(1) *In the direction of* —Our vessels are bound *for* Rangoon

(2) *For the purpose of* —The fat of the porpoise is good for gout

(3) *To the extent of* —He is good for one thousand rupees

(4) *On behalf of* —My vote is for open war

(5) *On account of* —If it had not been for your help, he would have been ruined

(6) *In regard of* —As for myself, I have no objection to go with him

(7) *In spite of* —For all his wealth, he was not happy

(8) *In the place of* —I took him for a learned man.

(9) *In exchange for* —He sells five oranges for an anna

FROM

From is used to denote —

(1) *Cause* —He acted from fear

(2) *Separation* —The child fell from the terrace

(3) *Starting-point* —He was fond of study from his childhood.

IN (C. U 1909)

In is used to denote —

(1) *Place* —He lives in England

(2) *Time* —He will come back in an hour

(3) *Condition* —I am in good health now

(4) *Point of reference* —He was disappointed in his son.

(5) *Power* —I shall help you as much as in me lies

OF (C. U 1909)

Of is used to denote —

(1) *From* with the notion of separation —Kodda of money

(2) *Proceeding from* with the notion of source, origin —
e comes of a respectable family

(3) *Resulting from* with the notion of *cause* —He died of cholera

(4) *Possession* —The shop of Robert

(5) *Apposition* —The continent of Asia

(6) *Material* —A ring of gold

(7) *Reference* —Blind of one eye

(8) *Partition* —The wings of the bird

ON or UPON

On or *upon* is used to denote —

(1) *Contact with the upper surface* —The book is *on* the table

(2) *Time* —See me *on* Monday Once *upon* a time, a king named Bramhadatta ruled in Benares

(3) *Dependence* —Depend *on* your own exertions

(4) *Just after* —*On* hearing this, he went away

(5) *Because of* —He congratulated me *on* my success at the examination

(6) *In accordance with* :—He acts *on* his father's advice.

(7) *On condition of* —He was admitted *on* probation

(8) *In reference to* —I wrote a book *on* geography

TO

To is used to denote —

(1) *The direction of an action or a feeling towards an object, or state* —I bro'te the news *to* him She fell a victim *to* cholera

(2) *Purpose* —We came *to* dinner.

(3) *Degree, limit* —They fought *to* the last man He loves me *to* distraction

(4) *Comparison* —Five *to* one, he will succeed

(5) *Accompaniment, consonance* —She sang *to* a violin
This is not *to* my advantage

(6) *Reference to some standard* —He did not go there *to* my knowledge.

(7) *Result* —I did this *to* my cost

WITH

With is used to denote —

(1) *Companionship* —The girl came *with* her mother

(2) *Possession* —The book is not *with* me

(3) *Instrumentality* —The boy beat the girl *with* a stick

(4) *In spite of* —*With* all thy faults, I love thee still

(5) *Immediately after* —*With* these few words, he took leave of us

CHAPTER XXIII

DIFFERENT MEANINGS

Q & A Indicate as concisely as possible the meanings of the italicised words in the following —

BOARD

(1) On *board* a vessel=the deck of a ship (2) The teacher was writing on the *board*=a broad and thin strip of timber (3) Free *board* and lodgings=food (4) The *board* of examiners=council

CAPITAL

(1) The *capital* of India=the chief city (2) A *capital* hit=excellent (3) A *capital* should be used at the beginning of a sentence=a large letter (4) The business failed for want of *capital*=money for carrying on any business (5) *Capital* punishment=involving the loss of the head

CHARACTER (C U 1900)

- (1) Arabic *character* = letter (2) A wicked *character* = person (3) A fluttering *character* = testimonial (4) To give one a bad *character* = reputation (5) In his *character* as a judge = capacity (6) He had a great deal of *character* = strength of mind (7) A boy of good *character* = nature (8) A historical *character* = person

DEAD.

- (1) A *dead* language = no longer spoken (2) A *dead* letter = undelivered and unclaimed (3) He was *dead* against me = completely. (4) A *dead* capital = unproductive (5) A *dead* loss = complete (6) The *dead* of night = middle. (7) They were *dead* to all sense of honour = callous (8) A *dead* colour = dull (9) *Dead* silence = unbroken (10) A *dead* sleep = sound

DULL (C U. 1900)

- (1) A *dull* boy = slow of understanding (2) A *dull* day = gloomy (3) A *dull* trade = not brisk (4) A *dull* story = uninteresting (5) A *dull* instrument = blunt

FACE.

- A cube has six *faces* = sides (2) How can you have the *face* to tell me this? = impudence (3) He *made faces* at me = distorted his face (4) He was flying *in the face of* danger = right against. (5) This is absurd *on the very face of it* = obviously (6) He did not put a *good face* upon it = favourable construction (7) This consideration gives some *face* to his proceedings = show of reason

FAINT

- (1) *Faint* sound = indistinct (2) *Faint* colour = not bright (3) *Faint* breeze = gentle. (4) *Faint* efforts = weak.

FAIR. (C U 1909)

✓(1) *Fair* progress=tolerably good (2) *Fair* weather=cloudless (3) A *fair* judgment=impartial (4) *Fair* dealings=honest. (5) *Fair* handwriting=distinct, legible (6) *Fair* chance=favourable (7) *Fair* promises=inspiring hope and confidence. (8) *Fair* question=reasonable (9) *Fair* complexion=not dark (10) *Fair* sex=female

FRESH

(1) *Fresh* water=not salt. (2) *Fresh* hand in an office=inexperienced (3) *Fresh* mistakes=additional (4) *Fresh* flower=not faded (5) *Fresh* sweets=not stale

GOOD

(1) The above rule holds good=is applicable (2) He was very *good* to me=kind (3) One should make good one's promise=fulfil. (4) He is gone *for good*=for ever (5) He wrote to me a *good* long letter=very (6) He is *good* for a long walk=capable of (7) I was robbed of my *good* name=honourable (8) The *good* old days=excellent (9) He is *good* for ten rupees=may be trusted with (10) He is a *good* hand at essay-writing=skilful (11) He is *good for nothing*=worthless (12) The man got a *good* share of the property=considerable, not small (13) They had *good* cause to repent their bargain=sufficient (14) *Good* spirits=cheerful (15) *Good* sense=sound

HAND.

(1) His examination is *at hand*=near. (2) Your letter is *to hand*=is received (3) He *asked the hand* of my daughter=wanted in marriage (4) They decided *to take the work in hand*=to undertake (5) *To lend a hand*=to give assistance (6) *To have a hand in*=to be concerned in (7) *To wash*

one's hands of a thing=to have nothing to do with (8)
 The subject *in hand*=under discussion. (9) *Money in hand*=
 money actually in possession (10) *To have clean hands*=to
 be innocent

HARD

(1) *Hard* problem=difficult (2) *Hard* master=cruel.
 (3) *Hard* wood=difficult to work upon (4) *Hard* winter=
 severe (5) *Hard* task=fatiguing (6) *Hard* lot=difficult to
 bear (7) *Hard* water=containing mineral substances

HEAD

(1) He is *the head* of the class=the best student (2) He
headed the list of successful candidates=topped (3) I can't
make head or tail of what he says=understand (4) He has
 a *head* for mathematics=brain (5) The boil has come to a
head=to mature (6) There are twenty *heads* of cattle=
 individual animals (7) He is *over head and ears* in debt=
 plunged deep

HEAVY

(1) *Heavy* food=not easily digested (2) *Heavy* expenses
 =not easy to bear (3) *Heavy* burden=weighty (4) *Heavy*
 sound=loud

HIGH

(1) It is *high* time=full (2) *High* treason=treason
 against the State (3) *High* life=life among the aristocracy
 (4) *High* price=extravagant (5) *High* family=noble (6) He
 moves in a *high* circle=dignified (7) *High* living=living
 on luxurious food and drink (8) *High* words=angry
 (9) *High* road=public. (10) *High spirits*=cheerful

LIBERAL

(1) *Liberal* education=that which enlightens the mind
 (not *technical*). (2) *Liberal* translation=free (3) *Liberal* spirit

=not selfish (4) *Liberal* gift=bountiful (5) *Liberal* thinkers
=not orthodox (6) *Liberal* giver=open handed

LIGHT

(ADJECTIVE)

(1) *Light* soil=loose, sandy (2) *Light*-food=easily digested (3) *Light* troops=not heavily armed (4) *Light* mind=not strong (5) *Light* rain=not copious (6) *Light* woman=of evil character (7) *Light* engine=with no train attached (8) *Light* railway=not for heavy traffic

(NOUN)

(1) A strong *light*=dazzling brightness (2) Men of *light* and learning=culture (3) *To throw light*=to make clear (4) He appeared in the *light* of a scoundrel=character (5) Do not take my remarks in that *light*=sense, view

LIVING.

(1) *Living* river=running (2) *Living* creature=having life (3) *Living* coal=red-hot (4) *Living* faith=vigorous, (5) He depended on others for his *living*=means of subsistence

LOW

(1) *Low* position=humble (2) *Low* ground=not high (3) *Low* salary=small (4) *Low* voice=not loud (5) *Low* spirits=dejected

NAKED

(1) *Naked* body=without clothes (2) *Naked* eye=unaided by glasses of any kind (3) *Naked* sword=unsheathed

RUN

(1) The speaker *runs* from one topic to another=passes hastily (2) The letter *ran* as follows=its contents were

- (3) The street *runs* north and south = stretches (4) The poetry *runs* smoothly = flows (5) The play *ran* for *fifty* nights = was acted (6) The coach *runs* between two stations = plies back and forward (7) The ship has made a good *run* = quick voyage (8) The common *run* of mankind = most of the people we meet

SHORT

- (1) A *short* distance = not long (2) Our life is *short* = not long (in time) (3) A *short* supply = insufficient (4) A *short* story = brief (5) A *short* memory = weak (6) A *short* temper = irritable

SIMPLE

- (1) A *simple* child = not familiar with the affairs of the world (2) A *simple* problem = not difficult (3) *Simple* dress = plain (4) A *simple* fisherman = humble (5) *Simple* manners = unaffected (6) A *simple* touch = mere (7) *Simple* statement = clear (8) *Simple* style = easy

SORRY

- (1) A *sorry* fellow = worthless (2) The man is *sorry* = grieved (3) A *sorry* excuse = poor (4) A *sorry* bargain = unsatisfactory

TRUE

- (1) *True* copy = exact (2) *True* statement = not false (3) *True* love of country = real (4) *True* Hindu = orthodox (5) *True* to her husband = faithful

WORLD

- (1) The other *world* = sphere (2) The opinion of the *world* = public (3) His remarks did me a *world* of harm = a great deal (4) To begin the *world* = course of social life
-

CHAPTER XXIV

WORDS USED IN MORE PARTS OF SPEECH THAN ONE

ABOUT

- 1 A preposition I know nothing *about* his character
He is *about* to die
- 2 An adverb Once a lion was wandering *about* in the forest

ABOVE

1. A preposition His conduct is *above* suspicion.
2. An adverb, Birds fly *above*.
- 3 An adjective Translate the *above* passage into English
- 4 A noun God's showers blessings on His beloved sons from *above*

AFTER

1. A preposition The players had to stop the game *after* a few minutes
- 2 A conjunction I went to school *after* my father had gone away
- 3 An adverb He left the house a few hours *after*
- 4 An adjective The happiness of our *after* life depends upon our devotion to learning in early life

ALL

- 1 An adjective *All* men must die
- 2 A noun The poor widow was robbed of her *all*
3. An adverb *All* bloodless lay the untrodden snow.
I live *all* alone

ANY

- 1 An adjective Have you received *any* letter from him ?
- 2 An adverb The girl could not go *any* farther
- 3 A pronoun *Any* of these books will do

AS

- 1 A relative pronoun This is not such a book *as* I expected
- 2 A conjunction *As* he is ill, he cannot go to school to-day
3. An adverb He is not *as* intelligent as his brother
- 4 A relative adverb This will serve us *as* a pen.

BACK.

- 1 A noun He was seated safely on an elephant's *back*
2. A verb I have no patron to *back* me
- 3 An adjective We went out by the *back* door
- 4 An adverb Try to come *back* before ten o'clock

BEFORE

- 1 A préposition We cannot reach home *before* five o'clock
- 2 An adverb I have never seen him *before*
- 3 An conjunction Please see me *before* you start for Calcutta

BETTER

- 1 An adjective This is a much *better* plan
- 2 An adverb She sings *betttr* than her sister
3. A verb I am trying my best to *better* my circumstances
4. A noun Her sense of humour got the *better* of her.
We should respect our *bettters*

BOTH

1. An adjective *Both* the schools were closed
- 2 A conjunction You cannot *both* work and play at the same time
- 3 A pronoun *Both* of them were absent

BUT

- 1 A preposition 'All *but* Ram had fled.
- 2 A conjunction He was wealthy, *but* very parsimonious
- 3 An adverb Remember that the world was created in *but* six days
- 4 A relative pronoun There is none *but* (that not) understands his own interest
- 5 A verb and a noun *But* me no *but*s

CLOSE

- 1 An adjective They were *close* companions.
- 2 A noun At the *close* of the war, the troops were rewarded
- 3 A verb I could not *close* my door against him.
- 4 An adverb The time of our examination is *close* at hand

DOWN

- 1 An adjective The *down* mail started just at three o'clock.
- 2 A noun He has had many ups and *downs* in his life
- 3 A verb *Down* with the traitor.
- 4 An adverb They came *down* by train
- 5 A preposition They are walking *down* the shore

EARLY.

- 1 An adjective *Early* rising is a very good practice
- 2 An adverb Why do you go to school so *early* to day ?

EITHER

- 1 An adjective You can take *either* road.
- 2 A conjunction *Either* he is ill or absent from home
- 3 A pronoun *Either* of these two books will do

ELSE

- 1 An adjective I found no one *else* in the class.
- 2 An adverb How *else* could I do it ?
- 3 A conjunction I was not present there, *else* I would have helped you

ENOUGH

- 1 An adjective He had money *enough*
- 2 An adverb He was kind *enough* to invite us
- 3 A noun : I have *enough* to do

FAST.

- 1 An adjective . They were *fast* friends
- 2 A verb We *fasted* for forty hours
- 3 A noun : We break *fast* at seven
- 4 An adverb Don't walk so *fast*

FIRST

- 1 An adjective He was the *first* man to speak
- 2 An adverb Who came to school *first* to-day ?

FLEET

- 1 An adjective He mounted a *fleet* horse.
- 2 A verb The deer *fleeted* through the forest
- 3 A noun The *fleet* belongs to the French

HALF

- 1 An adjective A *half* holiday is better than none
- 2 An adverb The coward was *half* dead with fear
- 3 A noun One *half* of the work was done by me We walked *half* (of) a mile

ILL

- 1 An adjective · *Ill* news runs apace
- 2 A noun I returned the *ill* he did to me
- 3 An adverb He can *ill* afford to keep a servant

✓ LAST.

- 1 An adjective He was the *last* man to leave the room
- 2 An adverb We met him *last* in Calcutta
- 3 A verb . This misery will not *last* long
- 4 A noun The shoe-maker has lost his *last*

✓ LIKE

- 1 A preposition Act *like* a man
- 2 A noun We shall not see his *like* again
- 3 A verb I do not *like* to go with him
- 4 An adjective Two *like* (of exact resemblance) persons
can never be found in this world

✓ LITTLE

- 1 An adjective *Little* boys are fond of play
- 2 A noun Many a *little* makes a mickle It is but
little that we ask
- 3 An adverb I *little* liked his company

LONG

- 1 An adjective I have to come from a *long* distance
- 2 An adverb The war did not last *long*
- 3 A verb The mother *longs* to see her son
- 4 A noun This is the *long* and short of the matter

✓ MUCH

- 1 An adjective He took *much* trouble for me
- 2 An adverb I feel *much* better to day
- 3 A noun Too *much* of anything is bad

NEEDS

- 1 A noun My *needs* are few.
2. A verb Our country *needs* nothing so much as good mothers
- 3 An adverb He must *needs* leave the place at once

✓ ONLY

- 1 An adjective : He lost his *only* child
- 2 An adverb He lost his child *only*
- 3 A conjunction He is a good scholar, *only* (but) he cannot speak fluently

PAST

- 1 An adjective Their *past* history is buried in oblivion
2. An adverb A false report rides *past*
- 3 A preposition We started at half *past* ten
- 4 A noun . Try to forget the *past*

RIGHT

- 1 An adjective, He is the *right* man in the *right* place
- 2 A verb . I do not know how to *right* your son
- 3 An adverb , He was *right* glad to see me
- 4 A noun He cannot distinguish *right* from wrong

ROUND

- 1 An adjective I have purchased a *round* table
- 2 A noun The constable was on his *rounds*.
- 3 A verb The ship *rounded* the Cape of Good Hope
- 4 A preposition . The earth moves *round* the sun.
- 5 An adverb The wheels of a carriage go *round*

✓ SINCE.

- 1 A preposition I have not seen him *since* Monday last

2 A conjunction, *Since* you are, so eager to hear it, you shall know all

3 An adverb My uncle died two weeks *since* (ago)

✓ **SO**

1 An adverb This news is *so* good that it cannot be true

2 A pronoun I took him for a friend, but he was not *so*

✓ **SOME**

1 An adjective *Some* boys were absent

2 An adverb *Some* twenty members were present at the meeting

3 A pronoun Give me *some* of your books

STILL

1 An adjective I seem to hear his voice again in the *still* hours of midnight

2 A noun Nothing broke the deep *still* of the room save the ticking of a clock

3 An adverb I am *still* in bed

4 A conjunction He is old, *still* he can work like a young man

5 A verb *Still* the child

✓ **SUCH**

1 An adjective *Such* examples are very rare

2 A demonstrative pronoun John is a liar, but his brother is not *such*

TENDER

1 An adjective We should be *tender* towards the poor

2 A verb *Tender* my compliments to your parents

3 A noun : I made him a *tender* of money

THAT

- 1 A relative pronoun This is the pen *that* I gave him yesterday
- 2 Demonstrative pronoun The climate of Ranchi is cooler than *that of* Calcutta
- 3 A conjunction He said *that* his father was ill
- 4 An adjective What is *that* book ?
- 5 A relative adverb The moment *that* you utter a word, I will kill you

THEN

- 1 An adjective The *then* principal was absent on leave
- 2 An adverb He writes to me now and *then*
- 3 A conjunction If he can beat his mother, *then* there is no crime that he cannot commit
- 4 A noun We have not met again since *then*

TILL

- 1 A conjunction Wait there *till* I come back
- 2 A preposition I waited *till* evening
- 3 A verb They *tilled* the fields.
- 4 A noun There was no money in the *till*

WHAT

- ✓ 1 A compound relative I never borrow *what* (that which) I cannot repay
- 2 An interrogative pronoun *What* do you want ?
- 3 An interrogative adjective *What* class is this ?
- 4 A relative adjective Take *what* books you like *वेह*
- 5 An adverb *What* (=partly) with fatigue and what (=partly) with anxiety, the man was worn down to a shadow
- 6 An interjection What ! are you the man who arrested him ?
- 7 A noun I shall tell thee *what* (=something)

WORTH

- 1 An adjective His horse is not *worth* twenty rupees
- 2 A noun : He is not a man of much *worth*
3. A verb Woe *worth* (= be to) the man.

WRONG

- 1 An adjective , The letter was addressed to a *wrong* house
- 2 A verb He never *wrongs* even his enemies
- 3 A noun It is better to suffer *wrong* than do it

YET

- 1 An adverb He has not *yet* come back
- 2 A conjunction Though he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him

WORDS USED AS NOUNS —

- Bend—The road takes a *bend* from this place
- Better—We should respect our *bettors*
- Bite—A man seldom survives the *bite* of a mad dog.
- Bitter—The old man has experienced the sweets as well as the *bitters* of life
- Brave—None but the *brave* deserves the fair
- Break—*Breaks* are used in training horses
- Catch—He missed two or three easy *catches*
- Cold—If you go out, you may catch *cold*
- Common—The cow is grazing on the *common*
- Contrary—Dreams often go by *contraries*
- ✓ Cover—There was no name on the *cover* of the book
- Cut—The *cut* of the coat was not to his taste
- Daily—The result was published in all the *dailies* of Calcutta

Drink—Avoid intoxicating *drinks*

Drive—I prefer a ride to a *drive*

Elder—We should not bandy words with our *elders*.

Fall—He studied the causes of the rise and *fall* of empires

Feed—He cannot pay for the *feed* of the horse

Fill—We ate our *fill*

Forward—My *forwards* are playing better than my backs

Laugh—The old man indulged in a loud *laugh*

Lift—I got a *lift* after three years' service

Long—This is the long and short of the matter

Look—It is health that keeps up good *looks*

Make—Fans of the best quality and *make* are sold here

Movable—The widow removed all her *movables* to the house of her uncle.

Move—The whole army was instantly on the *move*

Necessary—Is tea among the *necessaries* of life ?

Past—God knows the past, the present, and the future

X Quick—My reproaches cut her to the *quick*

Reach—I am out of humanity's *reach*.

Refuse—The *refuse* of the town is collected in a place and used as manure for the field

Report—The annual *report* of the Post office reveals a prosperous year

Saw—Fetch me a *saw* from the carpenter's

Stand—The hackney-carriage driver was waiting on the *stand* for hire

Stay—I could not prolong my stay at Burdwan

Throw—The fish was caught at the first *throw* of the net

Touch—His qualities endeared him to all who came in *touch* with him

Vital—The ulcer has affected his *vitals*.

Wait—He lay in *wait* for the enemy.

Walk—Let us take a *walk* in the garden

Wear—These clothes are for ordinary *wear*

White—The *white* of an egg is not very wholesome

Whole—The *whole* is greater than the part

WORDS USED AS VERBS—

Age—Grief has *aged* his sister.

Air—He loves to *air* his grievances in public

Angle—He has no right to *angle* in my tank

Back—I have no patron to *back* me

~ Bare—He *bared* his teeth in a snarl of contempt

Bay—The dog *bays* at the moon

Beard—You have *bearded* the lion in his own den

Bell—Who will *bell* the cat ?

Black—This fellow cannot *black* shoes well

Book—I have *booked* my luggage by the Punjab Mail

Bottle—He has been *bottling* up his wrath all this time

Box—This man can *box* (fight with the fists) well

~ Brave—They resolved to *brave* (to meet boldly) all the horrors of this terrible journey

Breast—They took courage and *breasted* (opposed manfully) the waves

Bridge—Fifty persons have been employed to *bridge* the canal.

Brook—Shylock *brooked* (endured) the insult with seeming patience

Calm—She could *calm* the sea with her sweet music

Cash—I went to the Bank to *cash* (to exchange for money) a cheque

~ Cool—They were *cooling* their heels (waiting a long time) at the street-corner

Cow—The rioters have been *cowed* (subdued) by the police

Crop—The cruel husband has *cropped* the hair of his wife

Date—The Mahomedan era *dates* from the flight of Mahammad

Doctor—There is none to *doctor* the patient

Dog—The sins of the wicked will *dog* (follow as a dog) them even after death

Drive—He *drives* his carriage in the evening

Duck—As the balls came whistling overhead, we *ducked* (bent down) instinctively

Dull—His failure in the examination *dulled* (dampened) his spirits

Dust—I told you to *dust* the table

Eye—The police *eyed* him with suspicion

Face—My house *faces* the south

Father—The authorship of this book was wrongly *fatherea* on him

Finger—The girl *fingered* the clothes lovingly

Fire—The soldiers refused to *fire* upon the mob.

Fish—You must *fish* in smooth waters if you want to catch fish

Foot—As there is no carriage, we must *foot* (go on foot) the distance of ten miles

Hand—I told him to *hand* me the letter.

Head—He *headed* the list of successful candidates

Horse—*Horse* the carriage at once

House—The farmer *housed* the cows in a comfortable shed

Hurry—They *hurried* to the place of occurrence.

Husband—The youth *husbanded* (managed with economy) the money left by his father

Idle—Do not *idle* away your time

Iron—The washerman did not *iron* my shirts properly

Level—He employed some day-labourers to *level* the site.

Light—*Light* the lamp

Long—The mother *longs* for the return of her son

Lord—He *lorded* it over the members of his family

Man—All the ships were adequately *manned*

Milk—She *milks* the cow in the morning

Mouth—The old woman *mouths* her words

Near—The train was *nearing* the station, when the engine was suddenly derailed

Number—The students *numbered* four hundred

Oil—*Oil* your own machine

Pen—Please *pen* (write) a few lines to me at your leisure

Picture—Dreams cannot *picture* such a beautiful land

Pocket—He *pocketed* the insult silently

Point—The needle of the compass always *points* to the north

Prey—Cares and anxieties always *prey* upon the heart

Prize—He *prized* this horse above all

Roof—They *roof* their huts with the bark of this tree

Saddle—*Saddle* the horse without delay

Salt—He *salted* the fish carefully

School—The youth has not been properly *schooled* (trained)

✓Season—*Season* your discourse with the salt of humour

✓Second—None *seconded* the resolution

✓Secret—She *secreted* the outlaw in her own house.

Shadow—Two police officers *shadowed* (watched continuously and carefully) the suspect

Shame—The fearless spirit of the boy *shamed* even veteran generals

Shelter—They *Sheltered* themselves behind a wall against the coming storm

- Ship—At Madras they *shipped* a large cargo of hides
- ✓Shoe—He charges three rupees to *shoe* a pair of horses
- ✓Shoulder—The soldiers *shouldered* their muskets
- Silence—The mother *silenced* her children
- Skin—He ordered his servant to *skin* the mangoes
- Slate—They will *slate* the house within a month
- Soil—The boy *soiled* his boots with mud
- ✓Sort—The post-master was *sorting* letters
- Sound—I have *sounded* them one after another
- Station—Sentinels are *stationed* on the roof of the palace
- Steel—The widow *steeled* her heart against misfortunes
- Stone—The children *stoned* the frogs.
- Sun—My servant *suns* my bedding regularly
- Thin—Cholera has *thinned* the rank of common people
in Bengal
- ✓Thread—He *threaded* a gem after it had been perforated
- Trade—He is going to *trade* in distant lands
- ✓Train—They *train* soldiers to the use of arms
- ✓Tutor—Counsel has *tutored* witness to answer in the
negative
- Voice—He *voiced* the opinion of the whole community
- Water—They *water* the streets twice a day
- ✓Weather—The ship *weathered* many storms
- While—Do not *while* away your time in frivolous amuse-
ments.
- Wind—You should *wind* your watch regularly
- Winter—The regiment *wintered* in Burma
- ✓Word—The application has not been properly *worded*.
- Wound—We should not *wound* the feelings of our parents.

WORDS USED AS ADJECTIVES—

- Bay—He mounted a *bay* (reddish-brown) horse

Capital—The criminal has been sentenced to *capital* punishment

Choice—There are a few *choice* books in the library

Due—He failed to deposit money in *due* time

Express—This was the *express* order of the manager

Fast—They are *fast* friends

Fell—Cholera is a *fell* disease

Fleet—He mounted a *fleet* horse.

Live—The boy threw a piece of *live* coal on the house

Meet—This is not a *meet* reward for the troubles he took for you

Open—This is an *open* secret now

Set—The professor delivered a *set* speech yesterday

Spare—Please do this for me in your *spare* moments

QUESTIONS

1 Construct short sentences to illustrate the different uses of *what* (C U 1911, 1910, 1906)

2 Frame sentences to illustrate the various uses of *that* and *since* (C U 1913, 1911, 1910.)

3 Construct sentences to illustrate the different uses of *but* and *after* (C U 1912, 1910, 1906)

4 Form six short sentences in which—dog, beard, brave, face, back, hand are used as *verbs* — (C U 1901)

5 Construct six short sentences exemplifying the use of the following as *verbs* —cash, shame, light, brook, pen, skin (C U 1903)

6 Construct eight short sentences in which—black, head, breast, long, dull, cool, iron, lord are used as *verbs* (C U 1914)

7 Construct eight short sentences in which—look, cut, stay, refuse, break, report, touch, catch are used as *nouns* (C U 1904)

8 Construct short sentences exemplifying the use of the following as *verbs* —finger, head, eye, pen, bare, shoe, fire.
(C U 1902)

9. Form six sentences in which—weekly, uniform, round, green, flat, even are used as *nouns* and in the *plural* number
(C U. 1901)

Ans Weekly—I subscribe to three Bengali *weeklies*.

Uniform—The *uniforms* of the police are supplied by Banerjee & Co

Round—The two constables were on their *rounds*, when the accused was pursued by a crowd

Green—They live on *greens* and fruits

Flat—Only the upper *flats* of the house are to let

Even—The girls were playing at odds and *evens*
(জোড বিজোড)

10 'Construct eight short sentences in which the following are used once each as a verb, and once each as a noun —
Fly, spy, tie, line
(C U 1902)

Ans. FLY

Verb—Birds *fly* above

Noun—A *fly* was caught in a spider's web

SPY

Verb—The mother *spied* the foot-prints of Lucy in the snow.

Noun—A *spy* was sent to watch his movements

TIE

Verb—The bandits *tied* him up with a strong rope

Noun—Teachers and students are bound by a *tie* of relationship that nothing short of death can sever.

LINE

Verb—The street was *lined* with soldiers on both sides

Noun—A straight *line* is the shortest distance between any two points.

11 Construct nine short sentences in which the following words are used, once each as a participle, once each as an adjective, and once each as a verbal noun :—telling, cutting, shooting- (C U 1903)

Ans

Telling —

As a participle—He was *telling* tales about his friends

As an adjective—Examples are more *telling* than speeches

As a verbal noun—The *telling* of the story took me three hours

Cutting —

As a participle—He was *cutting* at the tree with a blunt axe

As an adjective—I was deeply wounded by his *cutting* remarks

As a verbal noun—The *cutting* of a tree which is not one's own is illegal

Shooting —

As a participle—The soldiers were *shooting* at an imaginary enemy

As an adjective—That small house is used by archers in the *shooting* season

As a verbal noun—The *shooting* of a star is ominous

12 Write sentences introducing each of the following words (a) as an adjective, (b) as an adverb, —*first, early, better* (C U 1917)

13 Construct *two* sentences to illustrate the use of any *two* of the following —(i) *shoulder* as a verb, (ii) *still* as a noun, and (iii) *since* as a preposition (C U. 1920)

CHAPTER
EXAMPLES OF FULL PARSING
A

1 About —

(a) He is about to go (1913)

About—preposition, governing the infinitive “to go” in the objective case

(b) He cannot go *about* (1913)

About—adverb, modifying the verb “to go”

(c) What is he talking *about*?

About—preposition, governing “what” in the objective case

(d) She is *about* as tall as my sister

About—adverb, modifying the adverb “as”

2 After —

(a) He spoke *after* me (1914)

After—preposition, governing “me” in the objective case

(b) He came long *after*

After—adverb, modifying the verb “came”

(c) I went to the school *after* he had gone away

After—conjunction, joining the two sentences “I school” and “He away.”

3 And.—

(a) He came *and* enquired (1912)

And—conjunction, joining the two sentences “He came” and “He enquired”

(b) Three *and* four is seven.

And—conjunction, joining the two words “three” and “four”

(c) John *and* Robert are cousins

And—conjunction, joining the two words “John” and “Robert”

(d) Jadu *and* Nagen are of the same age

And—conjunction, joining the two words “Jadu” and “Nagen”

4 As —

(a) He came *as* soon *as* he could (1913)

First *as*—adverb, modifying the adverb “soon”

Second *as*—relative adverb, modifying the verb “could” and joining the two sentences “He came as soon” and “He could”

Note—A relative adverb is a double part of speech—an adverb and a conjunction combined. As an adverb it modifies words, and as a conjunction it joins two sentences. “Conjunctive Adverb” is the name given to Relative Adverbs by Mason

(b) This is not such a good book *as* I expected

As—relative pronoun, agreeing in number, gender and person with its antecedent “book,” objective case governed by the transitive verb “expected”

Note—As is used as a Relative Pronoun only when it is preceded by *such*, *as*, or *the same*, or when it is equivalent to *which*

(c) *As* I am ill, I cannot go to school

As—conjunction, joining the two sentences “I am ill” and “I school.”

(d) He wept *as* he spoke

As—relative adverb, modifying the verb “spoke” and joining the two sentences “He wept” and “He spoke”

(e) Hot *as* the sun is, we must go out = Though the sun is hot, we must go out

As—conjunction, joining the two sentences “The sun is hot” and “We out”

(f) This shall serve us *as* a table = This shall serve us as a table would serve us

As—relative adverb, joining two sentences “This us” and “A table us”

(g) He considered the report *as* false = He considered the report as he would consider if it were false

As—relative adverb, joining the two sentences “He .. report” and “He false”

(h) He got up at six *as* usual

As—relative pronoun, nominative to the verb “is” understood

Note—*As* is here equivalent to *which*, and “the practice of his getting up at six” is its antecedent.

(i) I have never seen such a good man *as* this

As—relative pronoun, being in apposition with “this” which is the nominative of “is” understood

(j) I will punish you *as* the Head Master = I will punish you to what extent I am the Head Master

As—relative adverb, joining the two sentences “I you” and “To. .Master”

(k) *As* to that, I cannot decide at present

As—adverb, forming with “to” a prepositional phrase governing “that” in the objective case

(l) What are his intentions *as* regards me ? = What are his intentions as it regards me ?

As—relative adverb, joining the two sentences “What . intentions” and “It me”

(m) The statement was *as* follows = The statement was such as follows

As—relative pronoun, nominative to the verb “follows”

5 But—

(a) I can *but* do what I think right. (1905)

• But (only)—adverb, modifying the verb “to do”

(b) He will do anything *but* that (1905)

✓ But (except)—preposition, governing “that” in the objective case

(c) You may go *but* I shall stay (1905)

✓ But—conjunction, joining the two sentences “You may go” and “I shall stay”

(d) I can *but* try. = I can only try

But—adverb, modifying the verb “to try”

(e) I cannot *but* try = I cannot do anything except trying

But—preposition, governing the infinitive “to try” in the objective case

(f) All *but* he had fled

But—conjunction, joining the two sentences “All had fled” and “He had not fled”

✓ (g) But me no *buts* (1910)

But—used as a verb, transitive, active voice, imperative mood present tense, agreeing with its subject “you” understood

Buts—used as a noun, common, plural, neuter gender, third person, objective case governed by the transitive verb “but”

✓ (h) There is no mother *but* (=that not) loves her child

But—relative pronoun, agreeing in number, gender and person with its antecedent “mother,” nominative case, subject to the verb “loves”

(i) He did nothing *but* laugh

But—preposition, governing the infinitive “to laugh” in the objective case

(j) *But* for his help I should have been ruined

But—preposition, governing the phrase “for his help” in the objective case

(k) He is all *but* perfect (1916) = He is all except being perfect

But—preposition, governing the gerund “being perfect” in the objective case

(l) He is *but* a madman

But—adverb, modifying the verb “is”

6 By.—

(a) Do your duty *by* the University (1915)

By—preposition, governing “University” in the objective case.

(b) He stood *by*.

By—adverb, modifying the verb “stood”

7 Can —

I *can do* this.

Can—verb, transitive, active, indicative mood, present-tense, agreeing with its subject “I”

Do—simple infinitive, object to the verb “can”

Note—The verb *can* should never be parsed as an *auxiliary* verb

8 Each other, one another — 

(a) The two brothers loved *each other* = The two brothers each loved the other

Each other—reciprocal pronoun, objective case governed by the transitive verb “loved.”

Each—distributive pronoun, being in apposition with “brothers” which is the nominative of “loved”

Other—demonstrative pronoun, objective case governed by the transitive verb “loved”

(b) They looked at *one another*.

One—demonstrative pronoun, being in apposition with “they” which is the nominative of “looked”

Another—demonstrative pronoun, objective case governed by the preposition “at”

9 Else —

(a) How *else* could I do it? (1913)

Else—adverb, modifying the adverb “how”

(b) Who *else* was there? (1913)

Else—adjective, qualifying the pronoun “who”

10 Few —

(a) He has read *few* booksFew—adjective qualifying the noun *books*(b) He has read a *few* books (= a few of books)Few—adjective used as a collective noun, objective case, object to the verb *has read*

(c) Few shall part where many meet (1918)

Few—adjective used as a noun, nominative case, subject to the verb *shall part*

✓ 11 Many —

(a) *Many* a man was killed Many a man = many times one manMany—multiplicative numeral adjective, qualifying the phrase *a man*(b) They have not shed a *many* tears A many tears = a many of tearsMany—used as a collective noun, object to the verb *have shed*(c) Few shall part where *many* meetMany—used as a noun, nominative case, subject to the verb *meet*(d) He has read a great *many* books A great many books = a great many of books Many—used as a collective noun.

12 Like —

(a) Act *like* a man (1912)

Like—adjective used with the force of a preposition governing “man” in the objective case

(δ) We shall not see his *like* again (1910)

Like—adjective used as a noun, objective case governed by the transitive verb “to see”

(ι) I had *like* to have been ruined

Like—adjective, subjective complement to the verb “had”

✓ 13. None —

(a) He is *none* (= in no degree) the happier for all his riches

None—adverb, modifying the adjective “happier”

(δ) Silver and gold have I *none* = I have no silver and no gold

None—adjective qualifying “silver” and “gold”

14 On —

(a) How are you getting *on* with your studies?

On—adverb, modifying the verb “are getting”

(δ) He has no chair to sit *on*

On—preposition used as part of the verb

(c) The chairs they sat *on* were five in number

On—preposition, governing *which* (understood) in the objective case

15. One — १ १ १

(a) He paid me *one* rupee

One—numeral adjective, qualifying the noun “rupee”

(δ) *One* day two friends were passing through a forest

One—indefinite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun “day”

(c) *One* Mr Robert came to see you

One—indefinite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun “Robert”.

(δ) *One* should take care of one's health

One—indefinite demonstrative pronoun, nominative case, subject to the verb “should take”

(e) My cow is white yours is a black *one*

One—definite demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for the noun "cow", subjective complement to the verb "is "

(f) Every creature loves its young *ones*

Ones—common noun, plural, common gender, third person, objective case governed by the transitive verb "loves "

(g) There are five lazy boys and three industrious *ones* in this class

Ones—demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for the noun "boys," nominative case, subject to the verb "are "

(h) They went out one by one = They went out one going by (after) one

First one—indefinite demonstrative pronoun, nominative absolute.

Second one—indefinite demonstrative pronoun, objective case governed by the preposition "by "

16 Ought —

(a) You *ought to obey* the rules

Ought—verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, *present* tense, agreeing with its subject "you "

To obey—verb, transitive, infinitive mood, object to the verb "ought "

(b) You *ought to have obeyed* the rules

Ought—verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, *past* tense, agreeing with its subject "you."

To have obeyed—perfect infinitive, object to the verb "ought "

17 Out —

(a) He is quite *out* of it (1912)

Out—adverb, forming with "of" a prepositional phrase governing "it" in the objective case

(b) *Out* upon it (1907.)

Out—adverb used as a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “you” understood

18 Shall —

(a) I *shall* come

Shall—auxiliary verb, forming with “come” a future tense

(b) Thou *shalt* not *tell* a lie.

Shalt—principal verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future tense, agreeing with its subject “thou”

Tell—verb, transitive, infinitive mood, object to the verb “shalt.”

(c) He *shall* not *go*

Shall—principal verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future tense, agreeing with its subject “he”

Go—verb, intransitive, infinitive mood, object to the verb “shall”

19 Should —

(a) I *should* *go* there = It is my duty to go there

Should—principal verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “I”

Go—verb, intransitive infinitive mood, object to the verb “should”

(b) I *should have gone* there = It was my duty to go there

Should—principal verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past tense, agreeing with its subject “I”

Have gone—perfect infinitive, object to the verb “should”

(c) I worked hard lest I *should* fail

Should—auxiliary verb, forming with “fail” an indefinite past tense

20. Since.—

(a) *Since* last month I have been an invalid. (1906)

Since—preposition, governing “month” in the objective case

(b) I have not seen him *since* (1906, 1910)

Since—adverb, modifying the verb “have seen”

(c) I shall not go, *since* he is coming (1906)

Since—conjunction, joining the two sentences “I go” and “He coming”

21 *So*—

(a) He is sorry, *so* am I

So—pro adjective, being put for “sorry,” subjective complement to the verb “am”

(b) If you are offended, say *so*

So—pronoun, being put for the clause “That you are offended,” objective case governed by the transitive verb “say.”

(c) Wait for a month or *so* (=about a month)

So—pronoun, being put for “about a month,” objective case governed by the preposition “for.”

(d) I took him for a friend, but he was not *so* (=a friend).

So—pronoun, being put for “a friend,” subjective complement to the verb “was”

(e) As you sow, *so* will you reap”

So—adverb, modifying the verb “will reap”

(f) He was talking to *so* and so

So—indefinite demonstrative pronoun, objective case governed by the preposition “to”

22 *That*—

(a) *That* man is wise, (1913)

That—demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun “man”

(b) He worked hard *that* he might succeed (1913)

That—conjunction, joining the two sentences “He. hard” and “He. succeed”

(c) The child died the day *that* (= on which) it was born
That—relative adverb, joining the two sentences "The child day" and "It born"

(d) The rumour *that* he was killed is false.
That—conjunction, joining the two sentences "The rumour is false" and "He was killed"

(e) This is the reason *that* (= why) I did not go there
That—relative adverb, joining the two sentences "This reason" and "I there"

✓ (f) I knew *that that that that* messenger had brought was a false report (1903)

That (1)—conjunction, joining the two sentences "I knew" and "That report"

That (2)—demonstrative pronoun, nominative case, subject, to the verb "was"

That (3)—relative pronoun, object to the verb "had brought"

That (4)—demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun "messenger"

✓ (g) My answer is not so ludicrous as *that* of the teacher
that says *that that that that* is a demonstrative pronoun

That (1)—demonstrative pronoun, being put for "answer," nominative case, subject to the verb "is" understood

That (2)—relative pronoun, agreeing in number, gender, and person with its antecedent "teacher," subject to the verb "says"

That (3)—conjunction, joining the two sentences "That says" and "That pronoun"

That (4)—demonstrative adjective, qualifying "that" (5) used as a noun.

That (5)—used as a noun, nominative case, subject to the verb "is."

(h) He said *that that that that that* man put was wrongly used

That (1)—Conjunction (2) Demonstrative adjective (3) Used as a noun, subject to "was used" (4) Relative pronoun (5) Demonstrative adjective

(i) Do your duty, *that's* a good boy That=one who does one's duty

That—demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for "one who does one's duty", nominative case, subject to the verb *is*

23 The —

(a) I did not see *the* man

The—definite article, qualifying the noun "man"

(b) So much *the* better for him (1910)

The—demonstrative adverb, modifying the adverb "better."

(c) *The* more you read, *the* more will you learn

First the (=to what extent)—relative adverb, modifying the adverb "more"

Second the (=to that extent)—demonstrative adverb, modifying the adverb "more"

24. Well —

(a) I am *well*

Well—adjective, subjective complement to the verb "am"

(b) *Well*, will you go to Calcutta?

Well—adverb used expletively

(c) He writes *well*

Well—adverb modifying the verb "writes"

(d) Let *well* alone

Well—adverb used as a noun, object to the verb "let"

25. What—

(a) *What* man is this? (1912)

What—Interrogative adjective, qualifying the noun "man"

(b) *What* is your name ?

What—interrogative pronoun, being in apposition with “name” which is the nominative of “is”

(c) *What* a foolish fellow you are !

What—adverb used in an exclamatory sense, modifying the adjective “foolish”

(d) *What* a fool you are !

What—adjective used in an exclamatory sense, qualifying the noun “fool”

(e) Take *what* books you like !

What—relative adjective, qualifying the noun “books”

(f) *What* with the wind, and *what* with the rain, the players had to stop the game after a few minutes. (1910)

What (partly)—adverb, modifying the preposition “with”

26 **Who** —

(a) *Who* came to you ?

Who—interrogative pronoun, nominative case, subject to the verb “came,”

(b) *Who* was he ?

Who—interrogative pronoun, being in apposition with “he” which is the nominative of “was”

27 **Why** —

(a) *Why* do you read this ?

Why—interrogative adverb, modifying the verb “read”

(b) Tell me *why* you went there.

Why—relative adverb, joining the two sentences “Tell me” and “You went there”

✓ (c) Tell me the *why* and wherefore

Why—used as a noun, direct object to the verb “tell”

B.

1 **Adjective** —

(a) This is *my* book

My—possessive adjective, qualifying the noun “book”

(b) This book is *mine*

Mine—possessive adjective, subjective complement to the verb “is”

(c) This is *cow's* milk

Cow's—possessive adjective, qualifying the noun “milk”

(d) Take the medicine *every* two hours

Every—distributive adjective, qualifying the phrase “two hours”

(e) The *then* king was away from the kingdom

Then—adverb used as an adjective, qualifying the noun “king”

(f) This is my *own* garden.

Own—adjective added to “my” for the sake of emphasis, qualifying the noun “garden”

(g) To be *virtuous* is better than to be *rich*

Virtuous—adjective used absolutely.

Rich—adjective used absolutely.

(h) He did his *best* = He did his best doing

Best—adjective, qualifying the cognate noun “doing” understood

(i) He breathed his *last* = He breathed his last breath

Last—adjective, qualifying the cognate noun “breath” understood

(j) The *more*, the merrier = The more persons there are the merrier they are

More—adjective, qualifying the noun “persons” understood

2 Adverb —

(a) *Smack* went the whip

Smack—verb used as an adverb, modifying the verb “went”

(b) *Unfortunately* he was absent from home

Unfortunately—adverb, modifying the entire sentence
 "He home "

(c) I am *sincerely* yours

Sincerely—adverb, modifying the possessive adjective
 "yours "

(d) A ball passed *exactly* over my head.

Exactly—adverb, modifying the preposition "over "

(e) He comes here *only* when my father is absent

Only—adverb, modifying the conjunction "when "

(f) I reached home *two hours* after midnight

Two hours—adverbial phrase, modifying the preposition
 "after "

(g) I reached home *two hours* after my father had died

Two hours—adverbial phrase, modifying the conjunction
 "after "

(h) He is almost a fool

Almost—adverb, modifying the verb "is "

(i) The river ran *purple* to the sea

Purple—adjective used as an adverb, modifying the verb
 "ran "

(j) *Off* with you

Off—adverb, modifying the verb "be" understood

(k) *Away* with him

Away—adverb, modifying the verb "go" understood

(l) This was far and *away* the best.

Away—adverb, forming part of the adverbial phrase "far
 and away" which modifies the adjective "best."

3 Adverbial object —

Note.—Nouns in the objective case are sometimes used
 adverbially to signify *space, time, value, degree* or *manner*.
 They are parsed as *adverbial objects*.

(a) Wait a minute. (1907)

Minute—adverbial object of time, modifying the verb
“wait ”

(b) He walked *home* (1914)

Home—adverbial object of space, 'modifying the verb
“walked ”

(c) I met him two *months* ago

Months—adverbial object of time, modifying the adverb
“ago ”

(d) He is eight *years* old

Years—adverbial object of time, modifying the adjective
“old.”

(e) This table cost me three *rupees*

Rupees—adverbial object of value, modifying the verb
“cost ”

(f) This wall is five *feet* high

Feet—adverbial object of degree, modifying the adjective
“high ”

(g) He cares not a *straw* for that

Straw—adverbial object of degree, modifying the verb
“cares ”

(h) Thy mill is *worth* my *crown*

Worth—adjective, subjective complement to the verb “is ”

Crown—adverbial object of value, modifying the adjective
“worth ”

(i) He comes here two *times* a *week*

Times—adverbial object of degree, modifying the verb
“comes ”

Week—common noun, singular, neuter, third person,
objective case governed by the preposition “a” (=on)

(j) Wait a *little*.

(C U 1918)

Little—adverbial object of time, modifying the verb
“wait ”

4 Cognate object —

(a) He lived an idle *life* (1915)

Life—abstract noun used as a common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “lived”

(b) He wept bitter *tears*

Tears—common noun, plural, neuter gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “wept”

(c) They went a long *way*

Way—common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “went.”

(d) He played the *fool* = He played the part of a fool.

Fool—common noun, singular, common gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “played”

(e) We ran a great *risk*

Risk—abstract noun used as a common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “ran”

(f) He writes a good *hand*

Hand—common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, cognate object to the verb “writes”

(g) I could not sleep a *wink*

Wink—abstract noun used as a common noun, cognate object to the verb “sleep”

(h) He was playing a double *game*

Game—common noun, cognate object to the verb “was playing”

5 Complements—

Note—The complement after an intransitive verb is called a **Subjective Complement**, and the complement after a transitive verb is called an **Objective Complement**.

(a) He is *welcome*

Welcome—adjective, subjective complement to the verb "is"

(b) The wine tastes *sour*

Sour—adjective, subjective complement to the verb "tastes."

(c) I found him *asleep*.

Asleep—adjective, objective complement to the verb "found"

(d) We made him *king*. (1917.)

King—common noun, singular, masculine, third person, objective complement to the verb "made"

(e) He had laid him *low* (1914)

Low—adjective, objective complement to the verb "had laid"

(f) Let me *alone* = Leave me alone

Alone—adjective, objective complement to the verb "let"

6 Conjunction —

(a) He asked *if* you were going (1907)

If—conjunction, joining the two sentences "He asked" and "You were going"

(b) I shouted at the top of my voice *in order that* I might be heard

In order that—conjunctive phrase, joining the two sentences "I voice" and "I heard"

(c) *Either* he *or* you must go there.

Either—correlative conjunction, joining the two sentences "He must go there" and "You must go there"

Or—correlative conjunction, joining the two sentences "He must go there" and "You must go there"

7 Dative of Interest

(a) Convey *me* Salisbury into his tent = I request you to convey Salisbury into his tent

Me—personal pronoun, dative of interest

(b) Solomon built *him* a house = Solomon built a house for himself

Him—personal pronoun, dative of interest.

8 Gerund, Verbal Noun and Participle —

(a) He is fond of *playing* tennis (1905, 1912, 1917)

Playing—gerund (noun and verb combined), as a *noun* it is objective case governed by the preposition “of” as a *verb* it governs “tennis” in the objective case

(b) He was fond of *playi ng* (1905)

Playing—gerund, objective case governed by the preposition “of”

(c) He *was playing* on the lawn (1905)

Playing—participle, forming with “was” a continuous past tense

(d) The *playing* children made the scene lively. (1905)

Playing—participial adjective, qualifying the noun “children”

(e) The noisy *playing* of the children disturbed me (1905.)

Playing—verbal noun, nominative case, subject to the verb “disturbed”

(f) *Riding* is a good exercise

Riding—gerund, nominative case, subject to the verb “is”

(g) He is *singing* (1913)

Singing—participle, forming with “is” a continuous present tense

(h) He loves *singing* old songs (1913)

Singing—gerund, as a noun it is objective case governed by the transitive verb “loves”, as a *verb* it governs “songs” in the objective case

(i) He loves the *singing* of birds (1913 1917)

Singing—verbal noun, objective case governed by the transitive verb “loves”

(j) He is *going* there to morrow.

Going—participle, forming with “is” a continuous present tense used here to denote a future time

(k) He is vexed at its *having fallen*

Having fallen—perfect form of gerund of the verb “to fall”, objective case governed by the preposition “at”

(l) They are proud of *having fought* a good fight

Having fought—perfect form of gerund of the verb “to fight”, as a *noun* it is objective case governed by the preposition “of”, as a *verb* it takes the cognate object “fight” after it

9. Infinitive —

Note—A Simple infinitive does the work of a *noun*, where as a Gerundial infinitive does the work of an *adverb* or *adjective*, or is used *parenthetically*

(a) I do not fear *to die*

To die—simple infinitive, object to the verb “fear”

(b) The house is *to let* (1907)

To let—gerundial infinitive, subjective complement to the verb “is”

(c) A house *to let*

To let—gerundial infinitive, qualifying the noun “house”

(d) *To tell* you the truth, I could not pay the money

To tell—gerundial infinitive used parenthetically

(e) He loves *to play* and comes *to play*

First *to play*—simple infinitive, object to the verb “loves”

Second *to play*—gerundial infinitive, modifying the verb “comes”

(f) He is *to blame* = He is to be blamed

To blame—gerundial infinitive, subjective complement to the verb “is”

(g) He was given *to understand*. = Somebody caused him (indirect) to understand (direct)

To understand—simple infinitive, retained object to the verb “was given”

(h) He did little more than *make* a beginning

Make—simple infinitive, objective case governed by the preposition “than”

(i) What *do* then ? = What to do then ?

Do—simple infinitive used absolutely

(j) The boy does not know how *to write*

To write—gerundial infinitive, qualifying *how* used as a noun

(k) He has enough and *to spare* And to spare = and enough to spare

“To spare—gerundial infinitive qualifying *enough* used as a noun

10 Noun —

(a) *Fish* live in water

Fish—common noun, plural, common gender, third person nominative case, subject to the verb “live”

(b) Some birds live on *fish*

Fish—material noun, singular, common gender, third person, objective case, governed by the preposition “on”.

(c) He will make (= be) a good *teacher*

Teacher—common noun, subjective complement to the verb “will make”

(d) I have a *cow*

Cow—Common noun, singular, feminine, third person, object to the verb “have”

(e) *Where* does he come from ?

Where—adverb used as a noun, objective case, governed by the preposition “from”

(f) He ran up and down the *hill*

Hill—common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, objective case, governed by the two prepositions *up* and *down*.

(g) I like a *thief* to be punished.

Thief—common noun, singular, common gender, third person, partial object to the verb “like”

Note—I do not like a thief, but what I like is *the punishment of the thief*. Hence *thief* is parsed as *partial object*

(h) The sailors are playing on board the *ship*.

Ship—common noun, singular, feminine, third person, objective case governed by the prepositional phrase “on board.”

(i) *Half* a loaf is better than no loaf = Half of a loaf is better than no loaf.

Half—used as a noun, subject to the verb “is”

(j) We *more* than trembled = We did more than tremble.

More—used as a noun, objective case governed by the transitive verb “did” understood

(k) He went out *sword* in hand

Sword—common noun, singular, neuter gender, third person, nominative absolute

(l) I do not write my name in *full*.

Full—adjective used as a noun, objective case governed by the preposition “in.”

(m) This *much* we can promise.

Much—used as a noun, objective case, object to the verb “to promise”

(n) He is half knave, half fool = He is half of a knave, half of a fool.

Half—used as a noun, subjective complement to the verb “is.”

11. Participle.—

(a) *Having found* him I was much pleased

Having found—perfect participle, qualifying the pronoun 'I'

(b) I insist on the letter *going* immediately = I insist on the immediate going of the letter

Going—participle used in a gerundive sense, qualifying the noun 'letter.'

(c) They depend on the house *being built* immediately.

Being built—participle used in a gerundive sense qualifying the noun "house"

(d) He comes *singing*.

Singing—participle, subjective complement to the verb 'comes.'

(e) He has *gone*

Gone—participle, part of the verb, forming with "has" a present perfect tense

(f) He is *gone*

Gone—participle, subjective complement to the verb "is"

(g) The house is *building*. = The house is being built.

Building—present participle, *active* in form but *passive* in sense, forming with "is" a continuous present tense.

12 Preposition.—

(a) The man was laughed *at*.

At—preposition used as part of the verb

(b) All *save* the captain were drowned

Save—preposition, governing "captain" in the objective case.

(c) It is half *past* three

Past—participle used as a preposition, governing "three" in the objective case

(d) *Despite* his riches, he was not happy

Despite—preposition, governing “riches” in the objective case

(e) He divided the money *between* John and Robert

Between—preposition, governing the phrase “John and Robert” in the objective case

(f) Some one will be selected *from amongst* you

From amongst—double preposition, governing “you” in the objective case

(g) Every favour comes *from* on high

From—preposition, governing the phrase “on high” (used as a noun phrase) in the objective case

(h) I have no pen to write *with*

With—preposition used as part of the verb

13 Pronoun —

(a) He ruined *himself*

Himself—reflexive pronoun, object to the verb “ruined”

(b) We talked *ourselves* out of breath

Ourselves—reflexive pronoun, object to the verb “talked”

(c) I *myself* went there

Myself—reflexive pronoun, being in apposition with “I” which is the nominative of “went”

(d) Fare *thee* well

Thee—personal pronoun used reflexively, object to the verb “fare”

(e) He stared *me* in the face

Me—personal pronoun, object to the verb “stared”

14 Verb —

(a) *I had rather go* = I had (= would) rather to go —
Mason

Had—verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood used in a subjunctive sense, 1st tense, agreeing with its subject “I.”

Rather—adverb, modifying the verb “had”

Go—verb, infinitive, object to the verb “had ”

(b) *Were* I present there, I would help you

Were—verb, intransitive, active voice, subjunctive mood, past tense, agreeing with its subject “I ”

(c) How *do* you *do* ? (1915)

First *do*—auxiliary verb used for the sake of asking a question forming with the second *do* a present indefinite tense

Second *do*—principal verb, intransitive (here), forming with the first *do* a present indefinite tense

(d) *Thank* you = I thank you (1912)

Thank—verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “I” understood

(e) *Come* here *please* = You please to come here.

Come—gerundial infinitive, qualifying the verb “please ”

Please—verb, intransitive (here), active voice, imperative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “you” understood

(f) Never *mind* = You never mind

Mind—verb, intransitive (here), active voice, imperative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “you” understood

(g) *Move* forward, = Move yourself forward

Move—verb, transitive used intransitively, active voice, imperative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject “you” understood

(h) We must not give *in*

In—adverb used as part of the verb

(i) So *please* Your Majesty = Your Majesty so please (desire)

Please—verb, intransitive (here), active voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject ‘Your Majesty ’

(j) *Please* God, I shall send my son to England.

Please—verb, intransitive (here), active voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject "God"

(k) *Happen* what may, I will not pay the money —
Though that happen which may happen, I will etc

Happen—verb, intransitive, active voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject "that" in *what*

(l) *Meseems*, = It seems to me

Meseems—verb used impersonally

(m) You do not know Sanskrit as well as he *does*
(= knows)

Does—pro-verb, being put for the verb "know", transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, agreeing with its subject "he"

(n) A large number of bears, *say* twenty, were caught

Say—verb, transitive, imperative mood used absolutely

(o) *Take* care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves = If you take care, etc

Take—verb, transitive, active voice, imperative mood used in a subjunctive sense, present tense, agreeing with its subject "you" understood

(p) No sooner *said* than *done* = It is no sooner said, than it is done

Said, done—participle, subjective complement to the verb "is" understood

CHAPTER XXVI

IDIOMS AND PHRASES.

A

1. Above all=chiefly God has given us eyes to see, hands to work, feet to walk, and *above all*, conscience to distinguish right from wrong

✓ According as—I shall help you with money *according as* I have promised

✓ Act a double part or Play a double game=to do one thing secretly and a different thing openly

✓ Add fuel to the flame=to increase the existing excitement The policy adopted by the nobility *added fuel to the flame*

✓ After all=on the whole, nevertheless This is a very useful book *after all* He worked hard, but *after all* failed in the examination

✓ Against a rainy day=for times of emergency. We should lay by something *against a rainy day*

✓ Agreeably to=in accordance with *Agreeably to* his request I went to the railway station

✓ All along—I have *all along* advised you to beware of such friends.

✓ All in all=the most influential Naren Babu was *all in all* in the office

✓ 10. All one—It is *all one* (all the same) now whether you go there or not

✓ All the same=all one, nevertheless. It is *all the same* to me whether you did it or not We disapprove of many things, but do them *all the same*

✓ **All the while** = during the whole period The boy was *all the while* thinking of other matters

✓ **Along with** — He returned the application *along with* the testimonials

✓ **Any longer** = any more You should not play with such friends *any longer*

✓ **Anything but** = not at all His manners were *anything but* agreeable

Apple of discord = any cause of envy and contention from the mythological story which tells that into the assembly of the gods, Eris, goddess of discord, threw a golden apple on which the words "for the fairest" were inscribed This apple was claimed by Venus, Minerva and Juno, but it was adjudged to Venus

✓ **Apple of one's eye** — The boy was *the apple of* his grandfather's eye (was very dear to him)

✓ **As a matter of fact** = in reality He promised to defray the expenses of my education, but, *as a matter of fact*, he did no such thing

✓ **As a rule** — *As a rule* a singular common noun is preceded by an article

✓ **As for or, As to** — *As to* my qualifications I beg to state that I passed the Matriculation examination in 1914

✓ **20 As good as one's word** = faithful to one's promise He promised me an appointment and I hope he will be *as good as his word*

✓ **As ill luck would have it** = unfortunately He was attacked with cholera, and *as ill luck would have it*, was dismissed from service

As in duty bound — We, *as in duty bound*, shall ever pray for your long life and prosperity

✓ As it were — The old man was, *as it were*, mad with
 105 *पूरे पुरे हो*

✓ At a loss = puzzled I am *at a loss* to decide which
 course to adopt.

✓ At all — My friend does not know English *at all* .

✓ At any cost — We must have the school affiliated *at any*
cost

✓ At any rate — My friend, in a manner, agreed to my
 proposal, *at any rate*, he did not object to it

✓ At arm's length = at sufficient distance Wicked men
 should always be kept *at arm's length*

✓ At a time — Go out two *at a time*

✓ 30 At best — "Life is *at best* very short "

At daggers drawn = at open enmity He was *at daggers*
drawn with them to the end of his life

At death's door = about to die He seems to be *at*
death's door now

✓ At hand — His examination is *at hand* (near)

✓ At home in = familiar with, He was thoroughly *at home*
in Sanskrit

At issue = disputed The point *at issue* is whether the
 plaintiff has or has not any title to the land

✓ At large = of independent means He is a gentleman
at large. *अलग, स्वतंत्र*

✓ At least — *At least* 5000 men were present at the meeting

At leisure — Please do this for me *at your leisure*

✓ At length — The robber was *at length* arrested and
 thrown into prison Candidates are required to write their
 names *at length* (in full)

✓ 40. At most — There are *at most* 300 pupils on the roll

✓ At one = in agreement As to the cost of the building, we
 are *at one* with the District Magistrate

At one's cost = to one's pain We, should not cut jokes
at our friends' cost

At one's disposal — The post is now at his own disposal

At one's fingers' ends = thorough knowledge of You
should have all these things at your fingers' ends

At one's sweet will = at pleasure Students should not
be allowed to go out at their own sweet will

At one's wits' end = utterly perplexed The young man
was at his wits' end for money

At present — I am at present doing nothing.

At random = without any aim or purpose. A madman
talks at random

At second hand = from some source other than the
original The news came to me at second hand

At sixes and sevens = in disorder The clerk went
away leaving the papers at sixes and sevens

At stake — His reputation is at stake (in danger) now

At the eleventh hour = at the very last moment They
sent for a doctor at the eleventh hour

At the latest — On Friday next, at the latest, I expect to
be with you

At the rate of — The Darjeeling mail runs at the rate of
55 miles an hour

At the top of — I had to speak at the top of my voice

At the top of the ladder, or at the top of the tree =
above others He was at the top of the tree in philosophy

At times — occasionally. At times the lawyer takes too
much drink.

At worst — He is at worst only a man of hot temper, but
not dishonest

Avail one's self of. — He availed himself of a week's
holiday to go home.

B

60, Be a nobody = to be a person of no importance
The head clerk was all in all in the office and the superintendent *was a mere nobody*.

Be at home = to feel comfortable We are quite *at home* in your house

Be born under a lucky star = to be fortunate in life

Be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth = to be a rich man's child.

Be Greek = to be unintelligible These *are all Greek* to me

Be hand and glove = to be on terms of great intimacy
We are *hand and glove* with each other

Be hard up—I was never so *hard up* (short of money) in my life.

Be high time—It is *high time* (time is more than past) that you should join some profession

Be in a fair way—My mother is now *in a fair way* to recovery

Be in a position = to be able I am not *in a position* to help you with money

70 Be up = to rise The sun *is up*

Be up to = to be equal to The man *is not up to* his work

Bear the brunt of = to endure the main shock of
The English had to *bear the brunt of* the enemy's onset

Bear the palm = to be victorious, be the best The Highlanders *bore away the palm* in the foot-ball league,

Beat about the bush = to approach a subject in an indirect way Come straight to the point and do not *beat about the bush*

✓ **Because of**=owing to People hated him *because of* his riches and power

Behind one's back—You should not speak ill of a man *behind his back*

✓ **Behind time**—The train arrived half an hour *behind time*

Be in bad odour=to be unpopular, to be in bad repute He *was in bad odour* with all the respectable men of the locality

✓ **Be in easy circumstances**=to be prosperous

80 **Be in one's good books**=to be in favour with him

Be in one's bad books=to be out of favour with him

Bell the cat=to take the leading part in any hazardous movement They all agreed that the king should have his faults pointed out, but none was willing to *bell the cat*

Below the mark=less than the required standard His composition, on the whole, is *below the mark*

Beneath dignity—It is *beneath your dignity* to keep company with a drunkard

✓ **Beside one's self**=out of one's senses His father was *beside himself* with joy when he heard that his son had headed the list of successful candidates

- **Be somebody**=to be a person of some importance The man walks about with an air of dignity as if he *were somebody*

✓ **Betake one's self to**=to have recourse to At last he *betook himself to* writing novels

✓ **Between Scylla and Charybdis**=between two equal difficulties or dangers I am *between Scylla and Charbdis*, if I do not go there my teacher will be displeased, and if I do my father will be offended

Be worth—He *is worth* five thousand rupees (=he has property worth five thousand rupees)

90 Bid fair=to make a fair promise The young man *bids fair* to be a great man in time

✓ **Bird's eye view**=a general survey From the top of this high tower, you can get a *bird's eye view* of the whole landscape

✓ **Black sheep**=a man in a company who is unlike the rest and makes trouble There is a *black sheep* in our club.

✓ **Blow hot and cold**=to be favourable and unfavourable by turns A person who *blows hot and cold* in the same breath should never be trusted

✓ **Blow one's own trumpet**=to speak highly of one's self He who *blows his own trumpet* is hated by all good men

Bona fide=genuine The application should be signed by your *bona fide* guardian

✓ **Born in the purple**=born as a prince *Born in the purple*, the youth was quite unacquainted with the vicissitudes of life

✓ **Born poet**=one who seems naturally gifted with the qualities required for writing poetry well

Break news=to communicate a disagreeable news very carefully I was the man to *break the news* of his death to his mother

✓ **Break the ice**=to get through first difficulties (in conversation) When you have once *broken the ice*, the rest becomes easy enough

✓ **100 Bring home to**=to make one thoroughly understand The teacher tried his best to *bring* the problem *home* to his pupils

✓ **Bring to a standstill**=to cause to stop wholly The war has *brought* the commerce of Europe *to a standstill*.

✓ **Bring to bay**=to bring to a position from which escape is impossible. The stag was at length *brought to bay*

Bring to light=to reveal All their secret schemes were *brought to light* by the police

✓ **Bring to the hammer**=to sell by auction The land was *brought to the hammer*

✓ **Burn the candle at both ends**=to waste in two directions at once

✓ **Bury in oblivion**=wholly forget Most of his glorious deeds were *buried in oblivion*

✓ **By all means**=certainly If any member has anything to suggest, I beg him *by all means* to do so

✓ **By and by**=presently You will come to know everything *by and by*

✓ **By any means**—You must *by any means* reach Calcutta on or before the 10th July

✓ **110 By chance**=accidentally. *By chance* I met him on the way

✓ **By degrees**=gradually The thing grew small *by degrees* and beautifully less

✓ **By dint of**=by force of He earned his position *by dint of* perseverance

✓ **By far**—He is *by far* (undisputably) the best boy in the class

By fits and starts=at random There is no chance of your passing the examination if you read *by fits and starts*

✓ **By hook or by crook**=by any means You must *by hook or by crook* secure a job for me

✓ **By leaps and bounds**—The price of paper has been increasing *by leaps and bounds* (very rapidly)

By nature=naturally Those who are wicked *by nature* should never be trusted

By rote=by repetition, without understanding The boy learns his lessons *by rote*

By the bye—*By the bye*, what is your younger brother doing now?

120 By virtue of=by reason of He got the post only *by virtue of* his noble birth

By way of=for the purpose of I tell you this *by way of* encouraging you.

C

Call names=to abuse We should not *call* any one names

Cast about for=to look about in all directions for He has passed the I, A examination and is *casting about for* an employment

Cast a slur upon—You have *cast a slur upon* your family by your acts

Cast into the shade, or Throw into the shade, or Put into the shade=to render less attractive His composition *cast* mine quite *into the shade*

Castles in the air=visionary projects Instead of building *castles in the air*, you should go on with your duties with patient industry

Catch a Tartar=to have to deal with a more powerful opponent The tyrant took him for a man of no consequence, but, as a matter of fact, he has this time *caught a Tartar*

Caught red handed=caught while committing a crime, or immediately after the commission of a crime The thief was *caught red-handed*

Change hands=to pass from one person to another The firm has *changed hands* owing to the inexperience of the manager

✓ **Come and go** — There is no *come and go* with this fellow
 (=he is too obstinate to be persuaded)

130 Come of age = to attain majority He took a wrong course as soon as he *came of age*

Come to blows = to fight "From high words they *came to blows*"

✓ **Come to grief** = to fall in trouble You will *come to grief*, if you do not mend your character

Come to light = to become known The secret has *come to light*

Cost it what it may — 'Speak the truth, *cost it what it may*.'

Cost one dear = to make one suffer heavily It will *cost you dear* to set up a new school here

Count chickens before they are hatched = to anticipate profits before they are due

Count on or upon = to rely on I *counted much on* his help

Crack a joke — Don't *crack a joke* at the cost of your friend

140 Crawl on all fours = to creep upon one's hands and feet The thief was *crawling on all fours* when he was arrested by a constable

Crocodile tears = affected tears, pretended grief

✓ **Cross one's mind** = to strike one Very often those gloomy thoughts *crossed my mind*

Crown with = to reward with At last his zealous efforts were *crowned with* success

✓ **Cry ditto** = to follow others blindly They all *cried ditto* to Mr Robert

Cry in the wilderness = to cry fruitlessly Their protest against the unjust tax was merely a *cry in the wilderness*

Cut a figure=to attract the attention of others. The speaker *cut a sorry figure* at the meeting.

✓ **Cut off in its bloom**—His life was *cut off in its bloom*

Cut short=to check abruptly, to shorten He was saying something, but the president *cut him short* His life was *cut short* by intemperance.

D

Dead against—My father is *dead against* smoking.

150 **Dead letter**=a thing out of use That law is now a *dead letter* in this country

✓ **Do a thing under the rose**=to do a thing secretly

Dog-in-the-manger policy—A man is said to follow a *dog in-the-manger policy* when he will not allow others to use a thing which he himself does not want

✓ **Do one a good turn**=to do an act of kindness He did me *a good turn* by withdrawing his application in favour of mine

Drawn game=a game in which neither party wins

Drop a veil over=conceal from public view The writer *dropped a veil over* his misdeeds

E

Eat one's fill=to eat to satiety The hungry man *ate his fill*

Eat one's salt—You are going to betray the man *whose salt* you have *eaten*

✓ **End in smoke**=to come to nothing The conspiracy *ended in smoke*

En route=on the way. The Viceroy halted at Agra *en route* to Simla

160 **Ere long**=soon I expect to be with you *ere long*

Ever and anon=now and then He stopped writing *ever and anon* to listen to the song sung by his sister

Ever so=however "Home is' home, be it *ever* so homely"

✕ Every now and then=frequently The girl comes to my mother *every now and then*.

F

✓ Face to 'face—Say what you have to say when you are *face to face* with him.

✓ Fair play=impartial treatment I do not want special consideration, what I want is *fair play* and no favour

Fair weather friend=a friend of favourable circumstances All his *fair weather friends* left him in the hour of danger

✓ Fall flat=to produce no effect His remarks *fell flat* on the company

Fancy price=an unreasonably high price put upon an article

✓ Fan the 'flame=to aggravate an evil Famine visited the land and *fanned the flame* of growing discontent

✓ Far and away=decidedly Naren is *far and away* the best boy in the class

170 Flesh and blood=body, human nature *Flesh and blood* cannot bear such insults patiently

Follow suit=to act as some other person has done The Magistrate voted in favour of the proposal, and the members *followed suit*

Fool away=to spend without advantage While success depended upon prompt action, the king *fooled away* his time in consulting astrologers

✓ For a time=for a short time The speaker stood silent *for a time*

✓ For fear of—I took a gun *for fear of* being attacked by robbers

✓ For good = for ever He is going to leave India *for good*

For nothing = without reason Why do you quarrel with him *for nothing*?

✓ For the purpose — I bought the book for learning English, but I find it too difficult *for the purpose*

✓ For the purpose of — He engaged a tutor *for the purpose* of learning Sanskrit

✓ For the sake of — I lend him some money *for the sake* of old friendship

180 For the time being — *For the time being*, he was no better than a raving madman

From hand to mouth = precariously With the pittance they received from the state, they managed somehow to live *from hand to mouth*

From time immemorial = from very ancient times This custom has been in vogue among the Hindus *from time immemorial*

✓ From time to time = at intervals, The old man looked at me *from time to time* with much interest *असमय-असमय*

Full swing = full motion The work of the press is now in *full swing*

G

Gain ground = prevail. The feeling against early marriage is *gaining ground* slowly but surely

~ Get into a scrape = to fall into trouble You will soon *get into a scrape* unless you cut your coat according to your cloth

Get off scot-free = to escape unpunished It will no doubt set a bad example to others if these culprits be allowed to *get off scot-free*

Give a person a bit of one's mind = to scold him, to

find fault with him I will *give him a bit of my mind* for his carelessness

✓ Give chase = to pursue The crowd *gave chase*, seized the murderer and handed him over to the police

190 Give countenance to = to lend support to It is foolishness on your part to *give countenance to* such a scheme

✓ Give vent to = to express openly I do not find suitable words to *give vent to* my feelings

✓ Good hand or capital hand or excellent hand at = skilful in She is a *capital hand at* painting

✓ Go through fire and water = to undergo all sorts of difficulties He promised to *go through fire and water* for my sake

Good speed = good success He wished me *good speed* in life

H

✓ Had better — You *had better* leave the place at once.

✓ Had rather — I *had rather* beg than depend on him

✗ Hair-breadth escape = a narrow escape The roof of the house fell in, but through the blessings of God I had a *hair-breadth escape* *जान बच गया*

✓ Hand in hand = conjointly The volunteers worked *hand in hand* with the officers of the police

✓ Hand to hand — The two armies came close up, and now it was a *hand to hand* fight

200 Harp on the same string = to dwell constantly on the same subject This old man always *harps on the same string*

• Have no leg to stand upon = to have no foundation
“Morality without religion *has no leg to stand upon*”

✓ Have two strings to one's bow = to have two means

of accomplishing an object The plaintiff has always *two strings to his bow*, and if he does not succeed on the first ground, he means to fall on the second

✓ **Head and ears**=completely He was over *head and ears* in debt

✓ **Heart and soul**=earnestly He threw himself *heart and soul* into the work

✓ **Hold one's tongue**=to be silent You are a fool and had better *hold your tongue*

✓ **Hold water**=to be sound or valid His arguments will not *hold water*

✓ **Hope against hope**=to continue to hope when all reasonable ground for expectation is gone

✓ **Horse and foot**=cavalry and infantry Both *horse and foot* suddenly fell upon us in the dark.

✓ **Hue and cry**=confused noise The villagers raised a *hue and cry* at the approach of the robbers

I

✓ **In a fix**=In a position of great difficulty My friend is now *in a terrible fix* and finds no means of getting free

210 **In a manner**=to some extent Your father agrees *in a manner* to my proposal

In a mood=in a frame of the mind Now I am not *in a mood* to be amused by your jests

In a round about way=without following the right or direct course The boy has done the sum *in a round about way*

In abeyance=These rules have been *in abeyance* (=in a state of suspension) for a long time

✓ **In accordance with**—Bonner acted *in accordance with* his own principles

✓ **In addition to**=besides *In addition to* your salary, you will get a monthly allowance of Rs 30

✓ **In all** — There are, *in all*, 500 students on the roll of the school

✓ **In any case** = anyhow, at any rate *In any case*, you shall join the post within a week He allowed me to go to the play, *in any case*, he did not object to my going

✓ **In as much as** = since I could not attend the meeting *in as much as* I was away from Calcutta

✓ **In or on behalf of** — He made the request to you *on behalf of* the poor widow

220 **In black** = in mourning. Hamlet used to appear *in black* even long after the death of his father

In black and white = in writing You must have the statement *in black and white*

In case — "You had better make a note of it, sir, *in case* you should ever be called upon to give evidence "

In case of or In the event of — I will give you another chance *in case of* failure

Incognito = disguised, under an assumed title The Governor was travelling *incognito*

In cold blood = without any cause of provocation The poor servant was put to death *in cold blood*

In common with = equally with others You shall be fined *in common with* your companions

✓ **In connection with** — Have you heard anything else *in connection with* that incident ?

In consequence of — *In consequence of* illness, I could not start for Calcutta on the appointed day

In consideration of — *In consideration of* his tender age, the Magistrate discharged him with a warning

✓ **In course of** = in the process of The building is now *in course of* construction

230 **In default** = in case of failure The accused was

fined Rs 300, and *in default* sentenced to three months' rigorous imprisonment.

In defence of—Counsel urged several reasons *in defence of* the conduct of his client

In defiance of=without caring The boys went on playing cards *in defiance* of the orders of the Superintendent

In detail=minutely Please write to me *in detail* all about the case

In embryo=in an undeveloped state The scheme of establishing a new school here is still *in embryo*

In exchange—He gave me a book and took my pen-knife *in exchange*

In favour of.—I am not *in favour of* keeping two servants

In favour with—He was *in favour with* almost all the greatest men of the country

In force—Those rules are no longer *in force*

In front of—My house stands *in front of* the college.

240 **In good faith**—I signed the bond *in good faith*

In good part=without getting offended I took his jokes *in good part*

In honour of—The school will remain closed on Friday *in honour of* the Commissioner's visit.

In keeping with=in harmony with His mode of living is not *in keeping with* his position

In lieu of=in place of, instead of, Pali is taught here *in lieu of* Sanskrit

In name=nominally and not practically He is a secretary only *in name*

In no time—I will finish the job *in no time* (very soon)

In obedience to—He has vacated the house *in obedience to* your father's request

✓ **In one's element** = in agreeable work or company He is quite *in his element* in the merchant's office

✓ **In one's teens** = between thirteen and nineteen years of age He is yet *in his teens* and quite inexperienced in the science of government

✓ 250 **In opposition to** — The young man married the girl *in opposition to* his father's wishes ~~for~~

✓ **In person** = personally The Magistrate went *in person* to the place of occurrence

✓ **In point of** = in respect of The nation was very poor *in point of* true greatness

✓ **In proportion to** — Our despair is *in proportion to* the hopes entertained

In pursuance of = in fulfilment of I am ready to do anything *in pursuance of* the decree

✓ **In pursuit of** — We set off at full speed *in pursuit of* the carriage

✓ **In quest of** = in search of The hunter was wandering about *in quest of* game

✓ **In regard to** — He said nothing *in regard to* the case

✓ **In respect of** — I am senior to him *in respect of* service

✓ **In round numbers** = approximately *In round numbers* ten thousand men were present at the meeting

✓ 260 **Ins and outs** = full particulars of anything He was aware of the *ins and outs* of the whole affair.

✓ **In spite of** = notwithstanding Mary loved him dearly *in spite of* his ugliness

✓ **Instead of** — The boy went to play *instead of* going to school

In the ascendant = on the upward grade His stars are now *in the ascendant*

In the back ground = Behind the front line The

Minister continued to direct the policy of the country though he kept himself *in the back ground*

✓ *In the case of*.—The Superintendent always held the balance even except *in the case of* his son-in law

In the event of = in case something happens A fresh disturbance may arise *in the event of* his father's death

In the face of = against They managed to retreat *in the face of* all opposition

In the guise of = under the appearance of He had access to the king *in the guise of* a mendicant.

✓ *In the least* —I was not hurt *in the least*

+ 270. *In the long run* = ultimately *In the long run*, the patient perseverance of the tortoise won the race

✓ *In the nick of time* = just at the right moment. We arrived at the station *in the nick of time*

✓ *In the prime of life* = in the best period of life The poet was cut off *in the prime of life*

In the teeth of = in the face of He achieved his end *in the teeth of* all difficulties.

✓ *In the twinkling of an eye* = in the briefest possible time The figure vanished in the air *in the twinkling of an eye*

In unison with = in agreement with Our deeds should be *in unison with* our words

✓ *In view of* = considering *In view of* the urgency of the case, we should come to a conclusion without any further delay

- *In vogue* = in practice The custom of dedicating books to patrons was *in vogue* in Johnson's time

J

✓ *Jack of all trades* = one who can turn his hand to any kind of business He was a *jack of all trades*, but master of

K

Keep at bay=keep in check On that narrow passage one man can *keep* twenty men *at bay*

280 Keep body and soul together=to maintain life These clerks with their poor income can hardly *keep body and soul together*

✱ **Keep in countenance**=to encourage The two friends *kept* each other *in countenance*.

✱ **Keep late hours**=to sit till late at night Some students are in the habit of *keeping late hours* before the examination

✱ **Keep up appearances**=preserve an outer appearance of wealth or dignity The youth was totally ruined by living beyond his means simply to *keep up appearances*

✱ **Kill two birds with one stone**=to accomplish two objects by one and the same means

✱ **Kith and kin**=relatives He was always as kind to the poor as he was to his own *kith and kin*

L

✱ **Last but not least**=last mentioned but not least in importance He was a distinguished writer, a good musician, and *last but not least*, an excellent player

✓ **Later on**=afterwards You will come to know everything *later on*

Laugh in one's sleeve=to laugh in secret I could not but *laugh in my sleeve* (laugh unobserved by the man laughed at) at the manner in which he began to speak

Laughing-stock=an object of ridicule "He talked nonsense and made himself the *laughing stock* of his hearers"

290 Laugh off=to make light of a thing "He *laughed off* her apprehensions assuring her that they were groundless"

• **Lead a cat and dog life**=to be in the habit of quarrelling The members of the family have been *leading a cat and dog life*

Leave in the lurch=to leave in a difficult situation At the sight of the bear, one of the friends *climbed a tree leaving the other in the lurch*

Leave no stone unturned=to spare no pains He promised to *leave no stone unturned* to raise the required sum

Lose one's head=to lose the power of judging calmly. Charles *lost his head* and adopted many unwise measures

Lion's share=the largest share

M

• **Make a clean breast of**=to confess fully He was determined to *make a clean breast of* the whole affair before the Magistrate

Make a fool of=to place one in a ridiculous position He tried to *make a fool of me* to the public.

Make a noise in the world=to attract the attention of a large number of people Alnaschar thought of marrying a princess and *making a noise in the world*

Make amends=to render compensation "He shall *make amends* for the harm that he hath done."

Make a mountain of a molehill=to magnify a trifling matter

300 **Make both ends meet**=to live within one's income With this scanty income he can hardly *make both ends meet*

Make fish of one and flesh of another=to treat two persons differently

Make good—The thief *made good* (accomplished) his escape. The creditor *made good* (established) his claim

Make much ado about nothing=to make a great fuss about a trifling matter

Make much of = to look upon as of great value, but treat one with great attention. Practical wisdom is inclined to make much of what it possesses.

Make neither head nor tail of = to understand nothing. He could make neither head nor tail of what he said.

Man in the street = an ordinary man.

Move heaven and earth = to make every possible effort. I will move heaven and earth to remove your difficulties.

Narrow escape = a narrow way of escape from being run over by a motor car.

Nip in the bud = to destroy at the very commencement of growth. All of my favourite projects were nipped in the bud by the sudden death of my patron.

No sooner than = No sooner had we gone out than it began to rain.

310 Not to speak of = Your uncles, your brothers, no to speak of your parents (as if such mention is unnecessary) have all been trying to help me.

Nothing short of = nothing less than. Nothing short of death can sever the connection that exists between a teacher and a pupil.

Notwithstanding that or Nevertheless = in spite of that. His examination was close at hand notwithstanding that he is going to see the performance of the play.

Now and again = occasionally. My aunt reads the Bible now and again.

Of late = lately. Of late, a new trouble had arisen in the country.

Of the first water = of the highest excellence. He is writer of the first water.

✓ **Off and on** = at intervals. He had had fever *off and on* for a couple of years or so.

Off one's guard = not watchful. Napoleon was never found to be *off his guard*.

✓ **Of one's own accord** = voluntarily. The public will not pay *of their own accord* for what yields no profit or convenience to them.

✓ **Once for all** = once only and not again. I command you *once for all* to express regret for what you have done.

✓ **On and on** = continuously. He was speaking *on and on* till he was asked by the president to stop.

✓ **On no account** — I will *on no account* release Antonio from his bond.

320 **On one's guard** = watchful.

✓ **On one's last legs** = in a tottering condition. His business is now *on its last legs*.

✓ **On purpose** = intentionally. I wrote John Gilpin *on purpose* to make people laugh.

✓ **On the alert** = watchful. The servants were *on the alert* all night.

On the brink of = on the very edge of something. He was *on the brink of* ruin.

✓ **On the contrary** = on the other hand. He never hated me, *on the contrary*, he always looked on me as his own brother.

✓ **On the eve of** = immediately before. My friends gave me a dinner *on the eve of* my departure from England.

✓ **On the ground of** — I declined the invitation *on the ground of* a previous engagement.

On the look out = in the act of looking for something. I was *on the look out* for a good situation.

✓ **On the part of** — Disobedience *on the part of* a student is an unpardonable fault.

330 On the point of—He was *on the point of* bursting into tears when he checked himself

✓ On the right side of forty = not yet forty years old

✓ On the wrong or shady side of fifty = more than fifty years old

On the score of = on the ground of He begs to be excused *on the score of* ignorance

On the spur of the moment = impelled by a temporary emotion The youth committed the crime *on the spur of the moment*

On the strength of—I cannot convict the accused *on the strength of* that evidence

On the wane = in a declining state The reputation of the poet has been *on the wane*

✓ Once again = a second time He read the book *once again*

✓ Once and again = repeatedly He read the book *once and again*

Out-herod Herod = to go beyond an extreme point, to surpass Herod in cruelty. The tyrant is said to have *out-heroded Herod* in acts of violence and cruelty

340 Out of doors—I seldom go *out of doors* after dusk

Out of one's mind or senses = insane The poor man is quite *out of his mind*

✓ Out of place = inappropriate Your remarks are *out of place* here

Out of sorts = slightly unwell

Out of temper or In a temper = in a bad temper I do not like to reason with you as you are *out of temper*

✓ Out of the question = not to be thought of impracticable Your proposal for establishing a college here is *out of*

1 Out of the frying pan into the fire = out of one difficulty into a greater one A man is only *out of the frying pan into the fire* when he borrows from a money-lender in order to get rid of a temporary difficulty

Over again = once more I shall have to read the book *over again*

∫ Over and above = in addition to You will get a monthly allowance of Rs 50 *over and above* your salary

✓ Over and over again = repeatedly She sang the same song *over and over again*. अरे

P

350 Part and parcel = an integral portion To pay the price and to take delivery of the goods are *part and parcel* of the same transaction

✓ Pay one back in one's own coin = to give tit for tat. He insulted me without reason and I have *paid him back in his own coin*

Play second fiddle = to take a subordinate part in anything

1 Pocket an insult = to receive an insult without resenting it He had to *pocket this insult* as it was offered by a man in power

Pros and cons = arguments for and against I come to a conclusion after judging the *pros and cons* of the question

✓ Put the cart before the horse = to reverse the natural order of things, to neglect to do first what ought to be done first

R

✓ Rain cats and dogs = to rain in torrents It has been raining *cats and dogs* since eight o'clock

Red letter day = auspicious or fortunate day

'Right hand man' = a man whose services cannot be dispensed with

S

Scarcely before or scarcely when — The thief had scarcely entered the room before he was arrested

360. Slip of the pen = a slight mistake made by a writer

Slip of the tongue = a slight mistake in speaking

Sooner or later = at some time or other of his own must come to grief sooner or later

Speak volumes = to mean much His absence from home at such an unusual hour speaks volumes

Stone's throw = as far as one could throw a stone His house is not more than a stone's throw from mine

Strike dumb = to render one speechless as one is when stupefied with amazement The sight of so much splendour struck the ambassador dumb

Strike home = to strike right to the point aimed at His remarks failed not to strike home

Strike work = to cease work The compositors have struck work

Sum and substance = purport This is the sum and substance of his speech

T

Take amiss = to misunderstand a thing I hope you will not take it amiss if I help her with money

Take advantage of = to profit by His enemy took advantage of his weak points

Take exception to = to object to I take exception to your remark

Take French leave = to go away without permission

Take time by the forelock = not to allow an oppor

tunity to slip away We should always take time by the forelock

370 The three R's—reading, writing, and arithmetic His father had felt his own sad deficiency with respect to the three R's

Think good—to regard as—*postpone* I should like to postpone the journey at present

✓ Thousand and one—to make sure I have written you a thousand and one times

✓ Through and through—entirely I have been drenched through and through

✓ Through thick and thin—in spite of all obstacles Helena followed her lover through thick and thin

Throw cold water on—to discourage He did not throw cold water on our projects

Throw dust in one's eyes—to deceive The servant threw dust in the eyes of his master

Thrust one's nose into—to meddle officiously with anything

Time hangs heavy on one's hands—Time hangs heavy on my hands (=I do not know how to kill time)

✓ Tit for tat—blow for blow; like for like He tore my cloth and I gave him tit for tat by breaking his umbrella

380 To the back-bone—thoroughly He was wicked to the back-bone

✓ To the best of one's recollection—as far as one can remember To the best of my recollection, he was not present there

✓ To the contrary—He uttered not a single word to the contrary.

✓ Turn over a new leaf—to commence a better course of life The youth, sincerely repentant, resolved to turn over a new leaf

U

Under a wrong impression—Students were *under a wrong impression* in supposing that Mr Banerjee was the writer of this book

Under one's thumb=under one's influence He is *under the thumb of the secretary*

Under the circumstances—*Under the circumstances* we could not but comply with his request

Under the eye of or under the nose of=under the observation of This took place *under the eye of the commissioners*

Ups and downs=alternate states of prosperity and adversity This old man has experienced many *ups and downs* in life

W

Wash one's hands of=to have nothing further to do with I have *washed my hands of* the whole miserable affair

390 Wear and tear=loss or injury by use, accident, and the like You must take into account the *wear and tear* of these articles

Well up for—The boy is not *well up for* (well prepared or) the examination

Well up in—He is not *well up in* mathematics

What's what—I know *what's what* (I know how to behave suitably in all circumstances)

With a view to=for the purpose of I mentioned this point *with a view to* encouraging you

With impunity=without being liable to punishment These culprits should on no account be allowed to escape *with impunity*

With one accord=unanimously The community *with one accord* said that a good thing had been done

With reference to or **With regard to** or **With respect to**—I have nothing to say *with respect to* that matter

Within ear-shot=within reach of one's voice The members grew silent when the secretary was *within ear-shot*

Without rhyme or reason=without any cause whatever He suddenly stopped my pension *without rhyme or reason*

Wolf in sheep's clothing=a wicked man who pretend to be harmless

400 **Worth while** or **Worth the while** or **Worth one's while**—It is not *worth my while* to try the experiment

QUESTIONS

- 1 Construct short sentences introducing the following —
(C. U 1915)

In the least, at all, in accordance with, in spite of, on the contrary, nevertheless

- 2 Write sentences containing any *four* of the following —
In spite of, in accordance with, all along by degrees, all the same, as well as, once in a way, at first hand
(C U 1918)

- 3 Insert an appropriate preposition after any *four* of the following and construct short sentences to illustrate their meaning—at variance—, make the best—, in keeping—, make an end—, in virtue—, lay stress—
(C U 1919)

- 4 Construct short sentences introducing any *two* of the following—to lose one's head, to cast about for, to turn over a new leaf, to make much of; to strike home, to come to terms
(C U 1920)

PUNCTUATION

The principal stops are—

The Comma (,), the Semicolon (;), the Colon (:), the Full stop (.), the Note of Interrogation (?), the Note of Exclamation (!) and the Dash (—).

11 Rules for the use of the Comma

1. Commas are generally used—

After an *adverbial phrase or clause* placed at the beginning of a sentence. As—To tell you the truth, I have not gone there at all. As I am unwell, I cannot go to school to-day. The sun having set, the cattle went home.

2. Before and after the *vocative case*. As—Tell me, father, if I am to remain here.

3. Before *quotations*. As—He said, "I am ill."

4. To mark the *omission of the verb*. As—To err is human, to forgive, divine.

5. Before and after phrases or clauses used as co-ordinating adjuncts to a preceding noun. As—Kalidas, the Shakespear of India, was a Brahmin. The jury, having retired for half an hour, returned a verdict of *not guilty*.

6. Before and after *phrases or clauses* let into the body of a sentence. As—He is, as it were, mad with joy. You may, if you go there, see him.

7. Between two or more words or phrases of the same kind not connected by *and*. As—A small, old house. Men, horses, and carriages.

8. Before a clause introduced by a *disjunctive conjunction*. As—He is poor, but honest. — —

9 Before the principal verb when the subject is a *clause* or a *lengthy phrase*. As—That he committed the murder, is evident

10 After some adverbs, as, *however, at length, at last, indeed, secondly, moreover, etc.* As—We did not, *however*, succeed in our attempt. *Indeed*, it is so now.

III Omission of the Comma

1 No Comma is used when the clauses are *restrictive*. As—This is the book *that* I lost yesterday.

2 No comma is used before *that* when it introduces an object clause or a subject after preparatory *as*. As—He said *that* the woman will go to Dacca. *As* the Government will go to Dacca.

cannot read a book without a pen and ink

this is the book which I lost yesterday

the Government will go to Dacca

CHAPTER XXVIII

COMBINATION AND TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

1 Sentence, Clause and Phrase

A combination of words that gives a complete sense is called a **Sentence**. There can be no sentence without a **Subject** and a **Predicate**. As—Ravi is a good boy.

A sentence which is part of a larger sentence is called a **Clause**. The sense conveyed by a clause depends upon and refers to something else. As—I do not know when he came here.

A combination of words that does not give a complete sense and that does not contain a finite verb is called a **Phrase**. As—A man of position, but of danger.

II Noun Clause, Adjective Clause and Adverbial Clause

The **Noun Clause** does the work of a noun. It may be the subject or the object or the complement to the finite verb. Noun clauses are usually introduced by *that, what, how, if, who, why, when,* etc.

That he committed the crime is evident.

This is exactly *what we expected*.

I do not know *why he went there*.

When he was born is not known.

The **Adjective Clause** does the work of an adjective. Adjective clauses are usually introduced by *relatives* and *relative adverbs*.

The book *which I lost* has been found.

This is the place *where I was born*.

The **Adverbial Clause** does the work of an adverb.

I did *as I was asked to do*.

I get up *before the sun rises*.

III The Predicate of a sentence

The **Predicate** of a sentence is **simple** when it consists of a single finite verb, as—The river *flows*. The bird *sings*.

The **Predicate** of a sentence is **complex** when adjuncts are added to it, as—He *walks fast*. He *was a king*.

IV Simple, Complex, and Compound Sentences

A **Simple Sentence** is that which contains a single subject and a single finite verb, as—I did not go to school.

A **Complex Sentence** is that which contains a principal clause with one or more subordinate clauses, as—I do not know when he was born.

A **Compound sentence** contains two or more independent clauses joined together by co-ordinative conjunctions,

as—Neither he nor his brother was present there Do your duty and be happy

QUESTIONS

Q Combine the following separate Simple Sentences into a Complex Sentence — (C U. 1880)

A husbandman sowed some corn in his field He had recently done so Cranes came to eat the corn The husbandman fixed a net in his field to catch these cranes

Ans A husbandman fixed a net in his field to catch the cranes that came to eat the corn which he had recently sown

Q Combine the following separate Simple Sentences into a Complex Sentence — (C U 1883)

The lion was once king of the beasts of the forest At last he became weak and helpless from old age He was unable to obtain food He felt that he would soon die of hunger

Ans The lion, who was once king of the beasts of the forest, having at last become too weak and helpless from old age to obtain food, felt that he would soon die of hunger

Q Express in one simple sentence —

If it had not been for the help which I gave him, it would have been impossible for him to advance (C U 1889)

Ans But for my help, it would have been impossible for him to advance

Q In the following sentences substitute *adverbial* or *adjectival* clauses for the phrases in *italics* — (C U 1893)

(a) He would not go *without his father's word* (b) The chief ran away *for fear of detection*. (c) Iron is too heavy *to float in water* (d) This is the place *of his birth* (e) I have some money *to spend* (f) Tell him the reason *of your going away*

Ans (a) He would not go unless he received his father's word (b) The thief ran away lest he should be detected

(c) Iron is so heavy that it cannot float in water (d) This is the place where he was born

(e) I have some money that I can spend (f) Tell him the reason why you went away

Q Substitute phrases for the clauses in italics, without altering the sense

(a) *As soon as you arrive*, you should call in a doctor

(b) *The student is so backward* that he cannot read a line correctly

(c) *Although he repeatedly failed*, he was not discouraged

(d) *Had you not helped him*, he would have been ruined

(e) *Since that is the case*, you had better go home

Ans (a) Immediately on your arrival, you should call in a doctor

(b) The student is too backward to read a line correctly

(c) Notwithstanding his repeated failures, he was not discouraged

(d) But for your help, he would have been ruined

(e) Such being the case, you had better go home

Q Combine each of the following pairs of simple sentences into one simple sentence

(a) I speak seriously. The man cannot be trusted. He reached the school. He found no teacher. He cannot come. I am not sorry

Ans (a) To speak seriously, the man cannot be trusted

(b) On teaching the school he found no teachers. (c) I am not sorry for his inability to come.

Q Rewrite the following in the form of simple sentences and as concisely as possible

(a) He rose from his chair in a rage, and chased the persons who had opposed him from the room

(b) When the session came to an end, the teacher gave all the boys who had won prizes, an invitation to a feast.

(c) People are afraid to make calls at his house, because he behaves so rudely to those who visit him.

Ans (a) Rising from his chair in a rage, he chased his opponents from the room.

(b) At the close of the session the teacher invited all the prize winners to a feast.

(c) People are afraid to call at his house on account of his rude behaviour to visitors.

Q. Rewrite the following sentences, enlarging both the subject and the object by the insertion of *adjectival clauses* —

The murderer horrified the judge. (C.U. 1905)

Ans. The murderer who was placed on his trial on the 25th January horrified the judge who was an old man of much experience.

Q. Substitute a *clause*, in the place of the word or words italicised in the following sentences and explain grammatically the nature of the *clauses* substituted. (C.U. 1906)

(i) Tennis is *his favourite game*.

(ii) The train came in *punctually*.

Ans (i) Tennis is the game which he likes best (adjective clause qualifying the noun "game").

(ii) The train came in exactly when it was due (adverbial clause modifying the verb "came in").

Q. Combine the following separate sentences into a single sentence — (C.U. 1908)

The lion was let out of its cage for the amusement of the spectators. It did not then turn at Androcles to devour him.

It came up quietly. It fawned upon him. A dog fawns in the same way upon its master. It licked his hand. He had been kind to it in the forest. It remembered this.

Ans The lion, when let out of its cage for the amusement of the spectators, did not run at Androcles to devour him, but remembering that he had been kind to it in the forest, came up quietly to lick his hand and fawn upon him as a dog fawns upon its master

Q & A Rewrite the following in the form of Simple Sentences —

(1) That he will succeed is not to be wondered at (complex) = His success is not to be wondered at (simple)

(2) The sun set and we went home (compound) = The sun having set, we went home (simple)

(3) When you have some leisure, tell me what people are saying in the town (1880) = Tell me at your leisure of the rumour in the town

(4) You must go there or you shall be fined = You must go there to escape being fined

(5) He not only passed the examination, but also got a scholarship = Besides passing the examination, he got a scholarship

(6) If you will think a little on the matter, you will find out where you are wrong (1880) = A little thinking on the matter will show you your mistake

(7) Tell me when and where you were born = Tell me the time and the place of your birth

(8) We should not disbelieve what he says = We should not disbelieve his word

(9) He was ill, and therefore he could not attend school = Being ill, he could not attend school

(10) The last time you and I met was in May, and this is December, eight months have passed (1880) = It is eight months now from our last meeting in May

(11) He is so weak that he cannot go out = He is too weak to go out

(12) The air of Darjeeling is as cold as I wish it to be =
The air of Darjeeling is cold enough for me

(13) A teacher cannot fine a boy, unless the Head Master approves = A teacher cannot fine a boy without the approval of the Head Master

(14) It is two years since your brother was married =
Your brother was married two years since

Q. & A Turn the following Compound Sentences into Simple Sentences —

(1) The rose is called the queen of flowers, for it stands first in brightness of colour = Standing first in brightness of colour, the rose is called the queen of flowers

(2) Not only money, but health is necessary to make life happy = Besides money, health is necessary to make life happy.

(3) The judge, as well as the jury, believed the accused to be innocent = The judge with the jury believed the accused to be innocent

(4) There are many serious defects in his character, only he is honest = Excepting only dishonesty, there are many serious defects in his character

(5) He tried his best to pass the examination, but still he failed = In spite of trying his best to pass the examination he failed

(6) He was very old, and therefore he could not go out = Being very old, he could not go out

(7) Give some clear proofs of your assertion, otherwise no one will believe you. = No one will believe you without clear proofs of your assertion

(8) He was very rich, but he was not happy = In spite of his being very rich, he was not happy

(9) He could not go to Calcutta, because he had

not sufficient time = He had not sufficient time to go to Calcutta

Q & A Change the following Simple Sentences into Complex Sentences, substituting *noun clauses* for the words in italics' —

(1) *His skill in medicine* is well known = That he is skilled in medicine is well known

(2) The physician predicted *the recovery of your son* = The physician predicted that your son would recover

(3) *His speech* on that occasion was unworthy of a man of his age = What he spoke on that occasion was unworthy of a man of his age

(4) I doubt not *his honesty* = I doubt not that he is honest

(5) I am anxious to know *the residence and occupation of your father* = I am anxious to know where your father lives and what occupation is

(6) *The extension of the damage* was never ascertained = *How far the damage extended* was never ascertained

Q & A Change the following Simple Sentences into Complex Sentences, substituting *adjective clauses* for the words in italics —

(1) I do not know *his whereabouts* = I do not know the place where he lives

(2) He is not a man *to be trusted* = He is not a man whom we can trust

(3) The people, *in their great excitement*, put the tyrant to death = The people, who were greatly excited, put the tyrant to death

(4) *Dishonest men* can never prosper = Such men as are dishonest can never prosper

(5) I do not remember the date *of his arrival*. = I do not remember the date when he arrived.

Q & A Change the following Simple Sentences into Complex Sentences, substituting *adverbial clauses* for the words in italics —

(1) *In spite of his promises to pay* the money, he did not pay it = Although he promised to pay the money, he did not pay it

(2) *On the approach of the tiger*, the girl fainted = The girl fainted when the tiger approached

(3) He is determined to buy the horse *at any cost* = He is determined to buy the horse, whatever it may cost

(4) Our knowledge should be *in proportion to our study* = The more we study, the more we should know.

(5) *During the spring*, the cuckoo remains in England = The cuckoo remains in England, while the spring lasts

(6) Go there *instantly*. = Go there as soon as it is possible

(7) He is content *there* = He is content where he is.

(8) *Apparently* he has no choice in the matter = He has no choice in the matter, as it appears

Q & A Rewrite the following sentences without a negative —

(1) Gold is not more useful than silver. = Silver is as useful as gold

(2) There was none but felt pity for him = Every one felt pity for him

(3) ~~His~~ services cannot be forgotten = His services are to be remembered

(4) Ram is not 'so intelligent as Jadu. = Jadu is more intelligent than Ram,

(5) He is not such a clever man as he was said to be — He was said to be a cleverer man than he is.

Q & A Rewrite the following sentences without using *too* or *but* —

(1) I am too weak to go to market = I am so weak that I cannot go to market

(2) This boy is too big for this class = This boy is so big that he ought not to be kept in this class

(3) Drinking water cannot be too pure = Drinking water ought to be as pure as possible

(4) He is too kind to me = He is more kind to me than he should be

(5) He is only too glad to be of service to me. = He feels extremely glad if he can be of any service to me

(6) There is no mother but loves her child. = There is no mother that does not love her child

(7) But for his interference, you would have been insulted = Had he not interfered, you would have been insulted

(8) He is an old man, but he can work = Though he is an old man, he can work

(9) He not only made a promise, but also kept it = Besides making a promise, he kept it

(10) This is madness, but there is method in it = This is madness, though there is method in it

CHAPTER XXIX

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES

I To analyse a sentence is to break it up into the several parts of which it is composed, and to show how these parts are related to one another

II Analysis of Simple Sentences

In analysing a simple sentence proceed as follows —

1 Say that the sentence is a simple one

2. Set down the subject of the sentence
3. Set down the adjuncts to the subject, if any
4. Set down the predicate verb with complement, if any
5. Set down the object of the verb, when transitive
6. Set down the adjuncts to the object
7. Set down the adjuncts to the predicate

III. Analysis of Complex sentences

In analysing a complex sentence proceed as follows —

1. Say that the sentence is a complex one
2. Write down the principal clause
3. Write down the subordinate clauses, mark each clause (A), (B), *etc'* and say what kind of clause it is and its function
4. Then analyse each clause separately like a simple sentence

IV Analysis of Compound sentences

In analysing a compound sentence, separate the co-ordinating clauses from one another and analyse each clause as a separate sentence.

V Specimens of Analysis—

- (1) Shylock the jew lived at Venice

This is a simple sentence.

Subject—Shylock

Adjunct to subject—the jew

Predicate— { Verb—lived.
 Complement—at Venice

- (2) The sun having set, the birds repaired to their nests

This is a simple sentence.

Subject—birds.

Adjunct to subject—the.

Predicate— { Verb—repaired
 Complement—to their nests

Adjunct to predicate—the sun having set

(3) He has given me a book to read

This is a simple sentence

Subject—he

Predicate—has given

object— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{me—indirect} \\ \text{book—direct} \end{array} \right.$

Adjuncts of objects—a, to read

(4) It is our first duty that we should obey our parents.

This is a complex sentence

(A) It is our first duty Principal clause.

(B) That we should obey our parents Sub. Noun
clause in apposition

(5) It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven

This is a complex sentence

(A) It droppeth Principal clause

(B) As the gentle rain drops from heaven ...Sub.

Adverbial clause

(6) The friend who was nearest and dearest to his heart was Bassanio, a noble Venetian, who, having but a small patrimony, had nearly exhausted his little fortune by living in too expensive a manner for his slender means, as young men of high rank with small fortunes are too apt to do

This is a complex sentence ,

(A) The friend was Bassanio . Principal clause

(B) Who was nearest and dearest to his heart Sub
Adj cl Adjunct to the subject *friend* in (A)

(C) Who had nearly exhausted slender means—Sub.
Adj cl. Adjunct to the complement *Bassanio* in (A)

(D) As young men to apt to do—Sub Adv cl
Adjunct to the verb *exhausted* in (C).

CHAPTER XXX

SOME IMPORTANT RULES

1 (a) A Collective noun denotes one *undivided whole* and is followed by a *singular verb* and a *singular pronoun*

Incorrect —The army were defeated

Correct —The army was defeated

Incorrect —The jury return their verdict to-day

Correct —The jury returns its verdict to-day.

(b) A noun of multitude is the name of a group of persons or things when they are referred to *individually* and *separately*. A noun of Multitude is followed by a *plural verb* and a *plural pronoun*.

Incorrect —The jury was divided in its opinion

Correct —The jury were divided in their opinions

Incorrect —The jury was kept without food

Correct —The jury were kept without food

(c) Some collective nouns are *generally* used in a plural sense

The *public* are often deceived by misstatement.

The *police* are making inquiries into the cause of the riot

These *cattle* are more precious to me than silver or gold

The *bulk* (greater part) of the students were absent

The *people* (persons) of India are very poor

Mankind are not naturally ungrateful.

The *peasantry* of Bengal are very poor

The *clergy* have no power to inflict corporal punishment

The *gentry* were not invited

The *mass* of the people are illiterate

The *majority* were on my side

2 (a) Some nouns are almost always used in the singular number —

Abuse (reproach), advice (counsel), alphabet, bedding, clothing, food, furniture, hair, information, issue (child or children), machinery, offspring (child or children), poetry, pollen (পুষ্পবৎ), scenery, stubble (নাভা)

(b) Some nouns are almost always used in the plural number —

Alms, annals, ashes, belongings, bounds (limit), circumstances (condition), contents, eaves, goods (property), lodgings, manners (behaviour), orders, outskirts (border), riches, surroundings, thanks, tidings, vegetables, wages

(c) Some adjectives are idiomatically used as *nouns* and only in the plural number —

Ancients, betters, bitters, bygoners, commons, contraries, eatables, equals, moderns, movables, necessities, particulars, valuables

3. Proper, Material or Abstract nouns cannot be used in the plural number and are not preceded by articles. They are regarded as Common nouns, when they are used in the plural number, or when articles are placed before them.

Homer (proper) was a great poet. He is the Homer (common) of Bengal. There are five Narens (common) in this class. Rice (material) is dear. The rice (common) of Chittagong is very fine. I am fond of truth (abstract). Speak the truth (common). There are seven wonders (common) in the world.

4 (a) As a general rule a Common noun in the singular number should be preceded by an article.

Incorrect — Lion is beast of prey

Correct — The lion is a beast of prey

(b) No article should be placed before plural common

nouns, unless they are used to denote some particular objects

Incorrect —The lions are beasts of prey

Correct —Lions are beasts of prey

Incorrect —Boys of this school are very good

Correct —The boys of this school are very good

5 (a) When adjectives qualify distinct objects joined by *and*, the article must be repeated if the noun is in the singular and not be repeated if the noun is in the plural.

Incorrect —The first and second class were examined.

Correct —The first and the second class were examined

or

The first and second classes were examined

Incorrect —The fourth and fifth chapter were finished,

Correct —The fourth and the fifth chapter were finished

or

The fourth and fifth chapters were finished

(b) The *article* should not be *repeated*, when *and* joins two nouns that refer to the same object

Incorrect —The Magistrate and the Collector visited the school

Correct —The Magistrate and Collector visited the school

6 (a) If *the* be used before an adjective to convey the idea of a *whole class*, it must be followed by a verb in the plural number.

Incorrect —The rich is not always happy

Correct —The rich are not always happy

(b) If *the* be used before a noun to convey the idea of a *whole class*, it must be followed by a verb in the singular number

Incorrect —The horse are noble animals

Correct —The horse is a noble animal

7 (a) When *one* is the subject to a verb, it should be followed by *one's* and not by *his* or *her*

Incorrect —One should respect his elders

Correct —One should respect one's elders

(b) **One** preceded by *every* and *no* can be followed by *his* or *her*. We can write "Every one should be careful of *his* health" and "No one will do this of *his* own accord"

8 (a) As the subject of a sentence, **none** should be followed by a *singular* verb

Incorrect —None but the brave deserve the fair

Correct —None but the brave deserves the fair

(b) When several persons or things are spoken of, **none** takes a *plural* verb by *attraction*

Incorrect —None but graduates needs apply

Correct —None but graduates need apply,

Incorrect —None of my friends was at home

Correct —None of my friends were at home

9 (a) A noun denoting a *place* or a *house* is sometimes idiomatically omitted after a **noun** in the possessive case, as—

I went to the confectioner's (shop)

My friends will go to Ram's (house)

(b) The noun must not be omitted after a **pronoun** in the possessive case, unless the noun be previously expressed

Incorrect —I shall go to yours

Correct —I shall go to your house

Incorrect —Yours of the 5th instant is to hand

Correct —Your letter of the 5th instant is to hand

*But we can write—"If you come to my *house*, I shall go to *yours*"

10 (a) When selection is meant, the comparative must be preceded by *the* and followed by *of*—

*The man was *the* stronger *of* the two

(b) The comparatives *superior*, *inferior*, *junior*, *senior*, *prior*, *anterior*, etc are followed by *to* instead of *than*

He is superior *to* me.

This is prior *to* that

(c) The comparatives *major, minor, interior, elder, former, latter, hinder, upper, inner, outer*, etc are followed neither by *than* nor by *to* They are used as positive adjectives —

Major term, minor importance, interior angle, elder brother, inner room, utter despair

11 When persons or things of the same class are compared, *any other* or *all other* should be placed after *than*

Incorrect —The whale is larger than any animal

Correct —The whale is larger than *any other* animal

Incorrect —Babar was better than all Mahomedans

Correct —Babar was better than *all other* Mahomedans.

12 (a) The superlative degree should be preceded by the definite article

Incorrect —He is strongest of all.

Correct —He is the strongest of all

(b) The article *a* can be used before a superlative formed by *most*, but not before one formed by *est* Thus we can say "a most happy man," but not "a happiest man"

Incorrect —He is most efficient officer

Correct — { He is a most efficient officer
He is the most efficient officer.

(b) When the superlative degree is preceded by a *possessive* pronoun, or is used to qualify a noun in the *vocative* case, it is not preceded by the definite article —

My best friend O dearest bird!

13. The Superlative degree must not be used when only excellence is indicated without any sense of comparison

Incorrect —He is a best officer

Correct —He is a *very good* officer

14 (a) As an adjective the word *enough* is sometimes placed after the noun it qualifies

I have money *enough*, or I have *enough* money

(b) As an adverb the word *enough* is always placed after the word it qualifies —

He was kind *enough* You will be good *enough*

(c) As an adjective or as an adverb, the word *else* is always placed after the word it qualifies —

Who *else* was there ? How *else* could I do it ? There was no one *else*

15 (a) As a preposition *Since* is preceded by a verb in the Present Perfect tense and followed by a noun denoting a *point of time*

Incorrect —He is absent since Monday last

Correct —He has been absent *since* Monday last

(b) As an adverb *Since* is preceded by a verb in the Past tense and a noun or phrase denoting a *period of time*

Incorrect —My uncle has died three years since

Correct —My uncle died three years *since* (ago)

(c) As a conjunction *Since* is preceded by a verb in the Present or Present Perfect tense, and a noun or phrase denoting a *period of time*, but it should be followed by a verb in the Past tense

Incorrect —Three years passed since my uncle has died

Correct —Three years have passed *since* my uncle died

Incorrect —It was a week since he left home

Correct —It is a week *since* he left home

16 (a) In comparative sentences the word *than* must have the *same case* after it as before it In these sentences *than* should be parsed as a *conjunction*

Incorrect —My sister is taller than her

Correct —My sister is taller than she = My sister is taller than she is tall

Incorrect —I love you more than he

Correct —I love you (objective) more than him=I love you more than I love him

(b) When *than* cannot have a verb expressed or understood after it, it must be parsed as a *preposition* and be followed by an *objective case* —

I cannot pay more *than* three rupees

17 (a) When two nouns are connected by *as well as*, the verb should agree in number and person with the first noun. In such sentences the clause introduced by *as well as* is *parenthetical*

Incorrect —Ram *as well as* John were gone (C. U 1912)

Correct —Ram *as well as* John *was* gone

Incorrect —Bacon *as well as* a Shakespeare were read
(C U 1915)

Correct —Bacon *as well as* Shakespeare *was* read

Incorrect —He *as well as* I am wrong }

Correct —He *as well as* I *is* wrong

Incorrect —I *as well as* you are here

Correct —I *as well as* you *am* here

(b) *With* should not be treated as equivalent to *and*

Incorrect —The king with his guards were killed

Correct —The king *with* his guards was killed

Here 'king' is the subject and "guards" is an object governed by the preposition *with*. Hence the verb agrees in number and person with the subject "king"

(c) When two nominatives are separated by "and not" the verb agrees with the first nominative —

Robert, *and not* his brother, *is* in the wrong

18 (a) When two or more subjects of different persons are connected by *or*, or *nor*, the verb agrees in person with the *subject nearest* to it —

Either John or I *am* wrong.

Neither he nor you *are* to blame

Either you or he *has* done this

(b) When one of the nominatives connected by *or* or *nor* is in the plural, the *verb* should be plural and the plural nominative should be placed *nearest to the verb* —

Either you or *they have* done this

Neither John nor *we have* gone

19. (a) *Each, every, either, and neither* should be used with singular nouns, as—each leaf, every man, either side, neither way.

(b) The medicine is to be taken *every three hours*

Here *every three hours* being taken collectively as *one* period of time has a singular sense Hence the sentence is correct

(c) A noun qualified by *each* or *every* should take a *singular pronoun*, when the noun is applied to only one gender But when both genders are implied, the pronoun should be plural [According to some grammarians, the pronoun of the masculine gender is quite sufficient to convey the idea of both genders]

Every boy should do *his* duty

Each woman did *her* best

Every person (man or woman) should respect *their* elders ,

(d) Singular nouns preceded by *each, every, or no* and connected by *and* are followed by a verb in the *singular* number —

Each boy and Each girl goes to school

Every flower and every leaf proclaims the glory of God

No teacher and no student is to blame

20 (a) In the position of words of *different persons*, the *second* person should be placed *first*, and the *first* person should be placed *last* —

You and *he* have done this

You and *I* have done this

You and *he* and *I* have done this

He and *I* have done this

(b) In confessing a fault, the first person may be placed first —

I and John are in the wrong { *scribble*

21 ² It² used for the sake of *emphasis* can be followed by a noun in any *number, gender or person* —

It is *I*, it is *they*, it is *she*, it is the *trees*, it was *you*, it was the *boys*

22 When two nouns have been mentioned in a previous sentence, *this* refers to the *second* noun and *that* refers to the *first* noun —

Study and play are both necessary, *this* (play) gives us pleasure, and *that* (study) gives us knowledge

23 (a) The Indirect object is always placed before the Direct object, If the indirect object be placed after the Direct object, it must be preceded by a *preposition* —

I gave him (indirect) a book (direct).

I gave a book *to* him

Bring me (indirect) three seers of milk (direct)

Bring three seers of milk for me.

He played me a trick

He played a trick *on* me

(b) Indirect object cannot be used without the Direct object If there be only one object, that should be the Direct object

Incorrect .—I wrote him yesterday.

Correct —I wrote a letter to him yesterday

24 Many takes a *plural* noun and a *plural* verb, whereas *Many a* takes a *singular* noun and a *singular* verb

Incorrect —Many soldier was killed

Correct —Many soldiers *were* killed

Incorrect —Many a flowers are' born to blush unseen

(C U 1915)

Correct .—Many a flower *is* born to blush unseen

25 (a) In a negative sentence the verb dare in the third person singular should be *dare* and not *dares*, and it should not be followed by *to*

Incorrect —He dares not to come here

Correct —He *dare* not come here

Incorrect —What man dare do, I dare

Correct —What man *dares to do*, I dare

(b) In a negative sentence, the verb need should be *need* and not *needs* in the third person singular, and it should not be followed by *to*

Incorrect —He needs not go there

Correct —He *need* not go there

26. (a) Intransitive verbs cannot be used in the Passive voice

Incorrect —He was failed

Correct —He failed

Incorrect —My father is died

Correct —My father has died, or my father is dead

(b) Some Intransitive verbs take two forms of the Present Perfect, *has gone* or *is gone*, *has come* or *is come*, *has arrived* or *is arrived*, similarly with the verbs—*ascend*, *begin*, *cease*, *depart*, *descend*, *fade*, *fall*, *retire*, *return*, *rise*, *vanish*, etc

Q Justify —The flower is faded John is arrived
He is descended from a noble family

Ans These sentences are quite correct The participles *faded*, *arrived* and *descended* have been used as subjective complements and not as parts of a tense

27 (a) A noun or a pronoun placed before a gerund must be in the possessive case, provided it denotes a person or other animals

Incorrect —I was displeased at the doctor not coming

Correct —I was displeased at the *doctor's* not coming

incorrect —I ask your favour of granting me leave

Correct —I ask the favour of *your* granting me leave

(b) The possessive *its* (instead of *it*) should be used with a gerund, even though its antecedent does not denote a person or other animals —

The letter has been written * I insist on *its* going at once

23 *Abstain, avoid, cease, commence, debar, desist, discourage, disqualify, dissuade, help, hinder, insist, persist, prelude, prevent, prohibit, refrain, stop, succeed, think*

These verbs should be followed not by an *infinitive*, but by a *gerund* (sometimes preceded by a preposition) But the verb *forbid* should be followed by an *infinitive* —

He prevented me from *going* I commenced *writing* Stop *writing* I think of *doing* this He ceased *speaking* I could not help *laughing*. But " My father *forbade me to go* "

29 Some transitive verbs *avail, betake, absent, bethink*, etc —always take a *reflexive pronoun* after them —

I availed *myself* of the opportunity

30 Verbs expressing mental states *feel, hate, know, like, love*, etc —have no *progressive* form, because they denote continuance in the simple forms

Incorrect —I am feeling feverish

Correct — *feel* feverish

Incorrect —He is loving you

Correct —He *loves* you

31 (a) With reference to some *future* event, before as a *conjunction* should never be followed by a verb in the *future* tense

Incorrect —The patient will die before the doctor ~~will~~ come

Correct —The patient will die before the doctor *comes* or *has*
come

Incorrect —I shall leave Calcutta before two months will pass

Correct —I shall leave Calcutta before two months *have*
passed

(b) As an *adverb*, **Since** is placed after the word or words which it qualifies —

My father died two years *since*

32 When a **Relative** pronoun has two antecedents of *different persons*, it should agree in person with the antecedent *nearest* to it

Incorrect —I am the man who help you

Correct —I am the *man who helps* you

Incorrect —You are the man who have been dismissed

Correct —You are the *man who has been* dismissed

33 When a **question** is asked *indirectly*, the **nominative** should not be placed after the verb

Incorrect —Let me know how are you

Correct —Let me know how *you are*

Incorrect —Tell me what *is* he doing now ?

Correct —Tell me what *he is doing* now

34 When two clauses are connected by a pair of correlative words, the **nominative** in one of the clauses should be placed after the verb or the auxiliary —

As you sow, so *will* you reap

The more I saw of him, the less *did* I admire him

No sooner *had* he gone than his father died

Scarcely *had* I left the house before it began raining

Not only *was* he poor, but he was also dishonest

35. Two **negatives** cancel each other —

He is *not inattentive* (not attentive)=He is attentive

He comes here *not unfrequently*=He comes here frequently

36 When two **singular nouns** joined by *and* denote *a single object or notion*, the verb should be singular. —

-The horse and carriage *is* at the door

Slow and steady *wins* the race

Time and tide *waits* for no man

Rice and curry *is* my favourite food

The sum and substance of the speech *is* as follows

Poor and virtuous is really rich

Bread and butter is my usual breakfast

The wheel and axle was out of repair

37 When a plural nominative is used to denote an object *thought of as a whole*, the verb should be singular —

Twenty rupees (a sum of twenty rupees) was paid

Three and four (the sum of three and four) is seven

Twice twenty five (the product of two and twenty-five) is fifty

Esop's Fables is an interesting book

38 (a) The Perfect Infinitive should be used *only* when the action denoted by it is *prior* to the time denoted by the *principal* verb —

He appears to have been rich = His appearance shows that he was rich before, but is not so at the present moment

(b) The Perfect Infinitive should not be used after verbs expressing *command, desire, hope* or *intention* since *going* or *not doing* a thing cannot be *prior* to the *command, desire, hope, or intention* of doing or not doing it

But so ne grammarians as Abbot, Angus think that the Perfect Infinitive may be used after the past tenses of the verbs *desire, intend*, etc when the *desire, intention*, etc have not been realised. Thus—"He intended to have gone" means "He intended to go but something prevented him from going"

39 (a) A present or a Future tense in the *principal* sentence should be followed by a Present, a Past, or a Future tense in the *dependent* sentence according to the sense required —

He says that he works hard

He says that he worked hard

He says that he will work hard

He has told me how he works

He has told me how he worked.

He has told me how he will work

He will tell me how he works

He *will tell* me how he *worked*

He *will tell* me how he *will work*

(b) A Past tense in the *principal* sentence must be followed by a Past tense in the *dependent* sentence —

He *said* that his father *was* ill

He *said* that he *would go* to Calcutta

I *proposed* that he *should be* nominated

(c) The Present tense should always be used in the dependent sentence when some universal fact is sought to be expressed —

He *says* that *the earth is round*

He *said* that *the earth is round*

(d) Any tense can be followed by *any tense*, provided the *dependent* sentence is introduced by some *conjunction of comparison* —

He *loves* you more than he *loved* me

He *loved* you more than he *loves* me

40. **Lest** is generally followed by the auxiliary verb *should* —

I left the place, *lest* I should be detected

* I keep your money, *lest* you should lose it

41 When the preceding verb is followed by *as if*, the subsequent verb should be in the *past tense* if the preceding verb is in the *present*, and in the *past perfect* if the preceding verb is in the *past tense* —

He *loves* me as if I *was* his own brother

He *ran* as if he *had been* a thief,

42 The verb *tell* should not be used to introduce a direct speech —

Incorrect — He told me, "My father is ill"

Correct — He said to me, "My father is ill"

43. *Fewer* denotes number, whereas *less* denotes quantity or degree. Hence *less* should not be used for *fewer*

Incorrect —There are no less than five hundred boys in this school

Correct —There are no *fewer* than five hundred boys in this school

You must not pay less than five rupees

This sentence is correct, because *five rupees* is regarded as a *sum of money* and not as a *number of coins*

44 The verb *use* denoting *customary actions* should not be used in the *present* tense

Incorrect —Hindus *use* to burn their dead

Correct —It is the custom of Hindus to burn their dead

45 Very often adjectives are substituted for adverbs
This use of adjectives is limited to monosyllables only —
Thus we say—"The moon shines *bright*" But we should not say—"The moon shines *brilliant*."

46 Use of some important Prepositions —

1 By and with—

By—is generally put before the *doer*, as, Ram was beaten *by* Gopal

With—is generally put before the *instrument*, as, Gopal struck him *with* a stick

2 In and After—

In—is used with a *period of future time*, as, I expect a letter from him *in* a week He will come here *in* an hour

After—is used with a *period of past time*, as, He went to school *after* a week

3 Before and within—

Before—is used to denote a *point of time*, as, I shall see you *before* 3 P. M.

Within—is used to denote a *period of time*, as, You must come back *within* two hours.

4 For and Since—

For—is used before a *period of time*, as, I have not seen him *for* five days

Since—is used before a *point of time*, as, I have been suffering from fever *since* Monday last

In and At—

In—is used with reference to *large places* and *extensive operations* and before *indefinite space or time*, as, He lives *in* England He was skilful *in* war Those battles were fought *in* Europe I was born *in* 1902

At—is used with reference to *small places* and *minor operations* and before a *definite part of space* or a *definite point of time*, as, They live *at* Jafarnagar Ram is playing *at* cards That battle was fought *at* Panipat I live *at* 170 Bowbazar Street He came back *at* 3 P M

6 In and Into—

In—denotes *presence or existence within*, as, I was *in* the house

Into—denotes *motion inward* and *change of condition*, as, I went *into* the house Translate the passage *into* English

7 Between and among—

Between—is used with reference to *two persons or things*, as, There are twenty stations *between* Chittagong and Chandpur

Among—is used with reference to *more than two*, as, He distributed the money *among* the poor

8 Amid or Amidst and Among or Amongst—

Amid or **Amidst**—denotes *quantity*, as, We went out *amidst* storm and rain

Among or **Amongst**—denotes *number*, as, He was *among* friends

47. Do not write—

	I	
any body	for	any body
any thing	"	any thing
can not	,	cannot
every body	"	everybody
in to	"	into
mad man	"	madman
no body	"	nobody
no thing	,	nothing
no where	"	nowhere
some body	"	somebody
some times	"	sometimes
some thing	"	something
	II	
any one	for	any one
everyone	"	every one
sometime	"	some time
youngman	"	young man

CHAPTER XXXI

CORRECTIONS.

Q Correct the following —(C U 1905)

(a) He sud to me to try again, to turn over a new page, but I sud my circumstance shall not allow prosecuting my study for future

(b) I leave by 4-30 o'clock train to Darjeeling to see sceneries of Himalayas, thus I have many businesses to day, but I shall see you at yours on going to station

Ans. (a) He told me to try again, to turn over a new leaf, but I told him that my circumstances would not allow me to prosecute my studies in future

(b) I leave by the 4-30 train for Darjeeling to see the scenery of the Himalayas, and so I have much business to-day, but I shall see you at your house on my way to the station.

Q. Correct the following —(C U. 1906)

(a) He was out of spirit himself about public matter and did not paint life with rose colour

(b) The man with his children were arrested, but none of them were placed before Magistrate for trying

(c) I made haste and on arrival at house found brother laying senselessly on earth

Ans. (a) He was out of spirits himself about public matters and did not paint life in rosy colours

(b) The man with his children was arrested, but none of them was placed before the Magistrate for trial-

(c) I made haste and on arriving at the house found my brother lying senseless on the ground

Q Correct —(C U 1907)

(a) His arguments are quite failed, and he has not the leg to stand upon

(b) Though he has an excellent tutor, and every advantage, but he twice failed to pass in the examination

(c) It is all on account that he does not work himself too hard

(d) Please count how many words are there in leaf of your page

(e) When you last have been to your village and when you expect to go again?

Ans (a) His arguments have totally failed and have no leg to stand upon

(b) Though he had an excellent tutor and every other advantage, yet he failed twice to pass the examination

(c) It is because he himself does not work very hard.

(d) Please count how many words there are in a page of your leaf

(e) When had you been last to your village? and when do you expect to go again?

Q Correct the following sentences, changing words if necessary. — (C. U 1908)

(a) I informed the matters to him, and he having got the information was too much surprised

(b) My lodging is comfortable and the rent is cheap, but the fooding costs great deal.

(c) I will lose all my hardly earned money if I were to make this investment

(d) He was very angry upon me and prohibited me not to go to him any more

(e) We had the pleasure of Mr and Mrs Oswell's company whom we thought were delightful people

Ans (a) I informed him of the matter, and on getting the information he was very much surprised

(b) My lodgings are comfortable and the rent is cheap, but the food costs a great deal

(c) I would lose all my hard-earned money, if I were to make this investment

(d) He was very angry with me and forbade my going to him any more

(e) We had the pleasure of the company of Mr and Mrs Oswell, who we thought, were delightful people

Q. Rewrite the following sentences, correcting any mistakes in grammar or idiom that you may notice —

(C U 1909)

(a) I asked for some money of advance, and he very

angry and told that how I can pay until your work is not finished

(b) When I went to his house, I found he had been died by cholera

(c) I was more thick and thin with him than a man is with his own brother

(d) I am suffering fever since five days and cannot come to the prize distribution

(e) He was failed in the F A Examination and has no chance for getting the post as there are some B A failed candidates

(f) In that case some men were charged as forgerers, some as perjurers, and some with pick-pocketing

(g) I told my teacher to add and alter my essay as he pleases, but he simply gave me back

Ans (a) I asked for some money in advance , but he got very angry and said, "How can I pay you until your work is finished?"

(b) When I went to his house, I found that he had died of cholera

(c) I was more intimate with him than a man is with his own brother

"*More thick*" is not absolutely incorrect, but is a vulgarity. It is perhaps permissible only in such an expression as—"They are as thick as thieves"

(d) I have been suffering from fever for the last five days and cannot, therefore, attend the prize-distribution meeting

(e) He failed in the F A Examination, and so he has no chance of getting the post as there are some candidates who got plucked in the B. A Examination

(f) In that case some men were charged with forgery some with perjury, and some with picking pockets

(1) I asked my teacher to add to or alter my essay as he pleased, but he simply gave it back to me

Q Correct, giving reasons —Lion is beast of prey, the lions are the beasts of prey he is most efficient officer, he is a best officer (C U 1901)

Ans "Lion is beast of prey" should be—"The lion is a beast of prey" Singular common nouns must be preceded by an article

"The lions are the beasts of prey" should be—"Lions are beasts of prey" No article should be used before plural common nouns, unless they are followed by some adjectival phrases or clauses

"He is most efficient officer" should be—"He is a most efficient officer." An adjective in the superlative degree formed by "most" should be preceded by an article

"He is a best officer" should be—"He is a very good officer" Superlative degree should not be used in place of a positive degree preceded by "very"

Q Defend or correct, where necessary, the following, giving reasons for your answer in each case —(C. U. 1910.)

(1) All but he had fled (2) None but the brave deserve the fair. (3) He is much the cleverst of the two (4) He asked for an alms (5) I do not like those sort of people, (6) This man is very different to that (7) If I were strong enough to work, I am strong enough to look after me

Ans (1) This sentence is not grammatically correct. A preposition governs a noun or pronoun in the objective case and not in the nominative case "But" being a preposition, the sentence should be—"All but him had fled" But since the nominative case after *but* is very often used even by the best writers, *but* may be taken here as a *conjunction* joining the two sentences "All had fled" and "He had not fled"

(2) Strictly speaking, this sentence is not correct "None" being singular the verb "deserve" should be "deserves" But as it is now usually used as a plural with *no one* for its singular, the sentence may be regarded as correct

(3) "Cleverest" should be "cleverer" The superlative degree should not be used in a case where only two persons or things are compared

(4) The sentence is correct, because the word "alms" is a "true singular" But as it is now generally used in the plural number, the article "an" should not be used before it

(5) "Those" should be "that" as qualifying "sort"

(6) "To" should be "from," because, "from" is the appropriate preposition after "different"

(7) "If I were" should be "If I am," and "me" should be "myself."

Q Correct or justify —(C U 1912)

(a) The wages of sin is death (b) Ram as well as John were gone (c) You have played instead of worked (d) Let each of us go there in,their turns (e) I object to you saying that (f) This house is to let.

Ans (a) This sentence is correct Actually "death" is the subject and "wages of sin" is complement to the verb "is"

(b) The sentence should be—"Ram as well as John was gone" (See rule 17)

(c) The sentence should be—"You have played instead of working" The prepositional phrase "instead of" cannot govern a verb, but should govern a noun or pronoun in the objective case

(d) The sentence should be—"Let each of us go there in his turn," Each denotes separation and therefore should be followed by *his* or *her* But the sentence is correct, if both genders are implied (See rule 18)

(e) The sentence should be—"I object to your saying that " A noun or pronoun, provided it denotes a person or other animal, must be in the possessive case, when it is placed before a Gerund

(f) This sentence is correct "To let" is a gerundial infinitive, complement to the verb "is "

Q Correct or justify —(C U. 1914)

- (i) All but he had fled. (ii) My sister is taller than her
(iii) None but the brave deserve it

Ans (i) See Page 332

(ii) The sentence should be—"My sister is taller than she " (See rule 16)

(iii) See Page 326

Q Correct or justify —(C U 1915.)

- (i) I love you more than him
(ii) Bacon as well as Shakespeare were read
(iii) Full many a flower is born to blush unseen

Ans (i) The sentence is correct 'Than' as a conjunction should take the same case after it as before it (See rule 16)

(ii) The sentence should be "Bacon as well as Shakespeare was read " (See rule 17)

(iii) The sentence is quite correct "Many a" is followed by a singular noun (See rule 24)

Q Correct the following sentences —(C U. 1919)

(i) Between you and I, there is much reason in what he says

(ii) Do you know who you are speaking to ?

(iii) He was resolved of going to the front

(iv) He believed in a strict observance after times and fashions

Ans. (i) Between you and me says

(ii) Do you know whom you are speaking to ?

(iii) He was resolved on going to the front

(iv) He believed in a strict observance of times and fashions

CHAPTER XXXII

MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS WITH HINTS

1) Construct short sentences to illustrate the use of —

(a) *Adverbs* used as *nouns*

(b) *Prepositions* used as *nouns*

(c) *Conjunctions* used as *nouns*

Hints —(a) *Ins* and *outs*, from *here*, since *then*, till *then*, *where* do you come from, by *now*, tell me the *why* and *wherefore* (b) From *within*, from *above*, *ups* and *downs* of life (c) here is no money in the *till*, but me no *buts*, I am sick of your *ifs* and *buts*, there are too many *sinces* and *because*s in his speech

2 Construct short sentences to illustrate the use of —

(a) *Adjectives* that are used only in their *positive* and *superlative* forms

(b) *Adjectives* that are used only in their *comparative* and *superlative* degrees, but not in the *positive* degree

(c) *Comparatives* that are always used as adjectives in the *positive* degree

(d) *Comparatives* that can be used as *nouns*

(e) *Adjectives* that can be used only in the *positive* degree but not in the *comparative* or *superlative* degree

Hints —(a) *Top* classes, *head* boy, northern, southern (b) Inmost, utmost, farther, further etc (c) A matter of *minor* importance, *interior* angle, *elder* brother, *inner* apartments *outer* surface, *utter* failure (d) My nephew is a *minor*, *superiors*,

elders, betters, etc (e) Enough, earthen, weekly round, dead straight, etc

3 Parse the words in *italics* in the following —

(i) He played me *false* (ii) He was all *but* ruined (iii) *Hunting* the deer is very *amusing* (iv) *Round* the rocks he ran, where the *round* bay swerving *round* gently *rounds* the rugged shore

Hints (i) False—adjective, subjective complement to the verb 'played' But—preposition, governing the gerund *being ruined* in the objective case

4 Correct the errors in —

(a) He discouraged me to proceed.

(b) I got many informations from him

(c) This is a fine poetry.

(d) My brother could not go to the school on account of urgent business

(e) A variety of charming objects charm the eye

(f) The Magistrate passed order for his release

(g) These fruits are for me and you and John

Hints —(c) A fine piece of poetry (e) Charms

5 Insert *suitable words* in the places *left blank* —

(a) I worked hard—I should fail

(b) The defendant could not—a single witness to—his innocence

(c) They trembled—they spoke.

(d) Two years have passed—my uncle died

(e) We started early—we—not be late

(f) The king fell—love—her.

(g) He fell—a passion

(h) They were enlisted—the army.

(i) The man was plunged—debt

Hints —(e) That, might (g) Into (i) Into

6 Convert the following into the Indirect form of narration —

"I neither believe in ghosts nor feel uneasy," he replied I never saw a ghost myself, and I never met with any one who had, and I have generally found that strange and unaccountable things have almost always been accounted for, and found to be quite simple, on close examination I certainly can't imagine what that sound is but I am quite sure I shall find out before long "

7 Frame short sentences to illustrate the following —

(a) *Adjectives* used as *prepositions*. (b) *Prepositions* used as *Adjectives* (c) *V rbs* or *participles* used as *prepositions* (d) *Prepositions* used as *verbs*

Hints —(a) Like, near, next (b) *After* life, *down* train, *above* passage, *up* train (c) Save, past, pending, considering (d) *But* me no buts, *down* on your knees

8 Give three examples of—(a) the Nominative absolute, (b) the cognate object, (c) the Adverbial object

9 Construct short sentences introducing the following —

Out and out, fair and square, big and baggage, heart and soul, sick or sorry, talk big, look blank, tell upon, look sharp, run short

Hints —He proved to be an *out and out* (thorough) swindler We should be *fair and square* (honest) in all our dealings They had to leave the place *bag and baggage* (with all their belongings) My unc'e went *heart and soul* into the business

My horse is scarcely *sick or sorry* (ill, this phrase is used only for a horse) The lawyer *talks big* (boasts) about his profession The old man *looked blank* (seemed puzzled) when he heard of the theft This exertion will *tell upon* (injure) your health Please *look sharp* (make haste) about this I have *run short* of funds (spent all I had)

10 Fill up the blanks with appropriate prepositions —

(i) I cannot pass—his conduct though he passes—a good man

(ii) He took me—task—not acting—the information he gave me

(iii) We thanked them—their kindness—asking us

(iv) I went—Naihati—Calcutta

(v) He had no influence—the Zemindar, and therefore his request had no influence—his actions

(vi) That' rumour was founded—facts, but this has no foundation—facts

Hints —(i) over his , (ii) to, for, on , (v) over, on , (vi) on, in

11 Rewrite the following sentences, using for the *italicised* word in each, the one given immediately after it —

(i) He confessed his fault and was *forgiven*—(overlooked).

(ii) He was a great *help* to me—(service).

(iii) I do not *trust* him—(confidence)

(iv) He *laughed at* me—(ridiculed)

(v) My watch was *stolen*—(robbed)

(vi) *Condense* your arguments as much as possible—(concise)

Hints —(i) His fault was overlooked when he confessed it
(ii) He was of great service to me (vi) Make you arguments as concise as possible

12 Turn the following into Indirect narration —

A cat hearing that a hen was laid up sick in her nest, paid her a visit of condolence, and creeping up to her said "How are you, my dear friend what can I do for you? What are you in want of? Only tell me Is there anything in the world that I can bring you? Keep up your spirits, and do not be alarmed" "Thank you," said the hen, "do you be good enough to leave me, and I have no fear, but I shall soon be well"

13. Rewrite the following sentences, correcting any mistakes in grammar or idiom that you may notice --

(a) I will be glad to see you again here

(b) If either of those books are yours, tell me who you wish them to be given to

(c) John, and not we are to blame

(d) It is three and a quarter hours since he went away.

(e) The main part of the machine were the rollers

(f) Johnson's Lives of the Poets are an interesting book.

(g) He meditated upon revenge

(h) They divided the property in three shares

(i) Have you received any reply of your letter ?

(j) We will start by the 2-30 o'clock train

Hints —(b) Put *any* for *either* and *whom* for *who* (d) Three hours and a quarter (g) Omit *upon* (j) Omit *o'clock*

14. Give instances of (a) *An adverb* as *object* to a preposition ; (b) an *adverb* used as a *verb* , (c) a *verb* used as an *adverb*

Hints —(b) *Out* upon it (c) *Smack* went the whip

15 Distinguish between a *noun* clause, an *adjective* clause, and an *adverbial* clause Give three examples of each

16 Construct short sentences using the following *prepositions as adverbs* —

under, to, through, off, in

Hints —The fever was soon brought *under* (subdued) The queen was soon brought *to* (restored to consciousness) The work has been carried *through* The rose gives *off* a sweet smell Call *in* a doctor

17 Combine the following sentences into *one simple* sentence —

There were 300 persons on board Only one escaped All the rest went down with the ship One of the men drowned was Fitz Stephen He was captain of the ship The man who escaped was a butcher of Rouen

Hints —The ship having gone down, out of 300 persons on board including Fitz Stephen, captain of the ship, all but a butcher of Rouen were drowned

18 Fill up the blanks in the following —

(a) We should be careful not to—expense which we cannot—

(b) To replace indulgence—harshness is to substitute one evil—another

(c) As I have no use—the book, what is the use—my buying it ?

(d) He took advantage—my weak points, but he gained no real advantage—me in the end

(e) They thought they were labouring—a noble cause and—the public good.

(f) New tables are so—that you must—to procure second—ones

(g) Jadu as well as Gopal—to be rewarded for—proficiency—English

Hints —(a) Incur, meet (c) For, of. (d) Over me (e) In a noble cause

19 Frame sentences with the *plurals* of—man-of-war, man eater, statesman, talisman, German, Turkman passer-by and by-stander

20 Distinguish between Simple, Complex and Compound sentences, and give three examples of each

21 Form adjectives from *custom* and *milk*, nouns from *write* and *go*, verbs from *dense* and *colony*, adverbs from *fortune* and *steal*, and use the words so formed in short sentences of your own

22 Make sentences to exemplify the use of —(a) *level*—as a noun, an adjective, a verb, and an adverb. (b) *up*—as

a preposition, an adverb, an adjective, and a verb, (c) *side*—
as a noun, an adjective and a verb

Hints —(a) We did our *level* best (adverb) (b) *Up* with him (verb) (c) There are *six* notes on every page (adj) He always *sides* with you (verb)

23 Turn the following into indirect narration —

“Alas ! the brave man is no more Come Englishmen, one and all and take vengeance for the murder of the hero of the country Let the Germans know that the death of Kitchener will make the English bolder and firmer in their resolutions Down with the Huns on the fields of France and Belgium Glory be to the allied nations !”

24 Parse the italicised words in the following —

(a) They had *but* one means of escape and they could not *but* adopt it

(b) Woe *worth* the day

(c) *Talking* of carriages, a man was run over by a motor yesterday

(d) I was asked some *questions* by him.

(e) They *more than trembled*

(f) Practice makets *perfect*

(g) We are safe, *thanks* to you.

Hints —(b) *worth*=be to, verb, subjunctive mood (c) Participle used impersonally (d) Retained object to the verb *was asked* (e) They more than trembled=they did more than they trembled (f) Adjective, qualifying ‘one’ understood (g) Thanks to you=thanks being due to you

25 Correct the errors in the following —

(1) They insisted me to leave the room

(2) We take a pride to say so

(3) He is ready to take the work into his hands

(4) He has weakened instead of strengthened his case

- (5) We are all younger than her
- (6) They went to Dacca long before
- (7) He is the cleverest and honest man I ever knew
- (8) Let you and I read together
- (9) There are many new furnitures in the drawing-room.
- (10) Failing in the first attempt, no second attempt was made

Hints —(2) In saying so (3) In his hand (7) Most honest
(9) Much new furniture (10) Failing in the first attempt, he made no second attempt

26 Write down —

(a) The *diminutives* of—bay, car, mouth, goose, home, ice, nurse, pill, star, sack

(b) The *feminines* of—beau, bullock, gaffer, swain, tailor, hero, wether, marquis, duke, Mr

(c) The *plurals* of—Dutchman, Norman, lord-justice, state general, princess, soliloquy, mosquito, herself, appendix, genus

27. Compose short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning between the following pairs of words —

Replace and re-place, remark and re-mark, reserve and re serve, redress and re-dress, re collect and re collect, recount and re count, return and re-turn, reform and re form

Hints —He has been replaced by a more competent man The clerk should have been re-placed (=placed again) in his post The witness has been re-served with a summons Their wrongs should be redressed ere long She was unwilling to recount her sorrows Re-count the coins carefully The boy re-turned the passage into Bengal

28 Change the form of narration —

“Do you take me for a fool that I should spend so much money for a trifle?” At this he said that he had never seen a wiser man than I

Hints —I asked him if he took me for a fool that I should spend so much money for a trifle At this he said, "I have never seen a wiser man than you"

29 Distinguish between —

(a) I like the teacher better than him

I like the teacher better than he

(b) May I go out ?

Shall I go out ?

(c) May I cross the race-ground ?

Can I cross the race-ground ?

(d) We repaired the house.

We repaired into the house "

(e) I witnessed the murder

I witnessed to the murder

30 Write down —

(a) The *past tense* and *past participle* of—saw, flow, fly, fling, lie, lay, lose, loose

(b) The *masculines* of—spinster, sister, duck, filly, roe, countess, miss, slut, jenny-ass, sow-pig

(c) The *comparative* and *superlative* of—ill, up, fore, forth, late, sorry, glad, humble, poor, cowardly

31 Distinguish between—*my*, *mine* and *my own* and give illustrative sentences

32 Parse the words italicised in the following —

(a) He had *but* one box

(b) *There* is a tree *there* '

(c) *Only* a tyrant would act thus

(d) *Supposing* this *to be* true, you are certainly guilty

(e) He was so kind *as to take* me into his office

(f) He *thence* hence

(g) Knock *me* the gate

Hints —(b) *There* (1) Introductory adverb, used to introduce

the verb 'is' There (2) adverb, modifying the verb is (f) Thee—personal pronoun used reflexively, objective case placed after the intransitive verb 'hie' (g) Knock the gate for me Me—personal pronoun, dative of interest

33 Combine the following sentences into *one simple sentence* —

The English were superior to the Germans in¹ number. The English defeated the Germans. The battle was long and well-contested There was no battle, it is said, that was fought during the war that was so desperate

34 Write in Indirect speech the following conversation between Rama and his sister as reported to Govinda on the next day at the Railway station —

Rama "Have you heard that Govinda has holidays now and that he will arrive here to-morrow?"

Sister "No, when did his holidays commence?"

Rama "Last week, let us go and ask his father to take us with him to the station to meet him on arrival"

Sister "Alas! I must stay with our mother, for she is ill, but go you to the station without me"

Hints —I (Rama) asked my sister if she had heard that you (Govinda) have holidays now and that you would arrive here to-day She replied that she had not and asked me when your holidays had commenced

35 Reverse the meaning of each of the following by adding a *prefix*, and construct short sentences with the words thus formed —

Sufficient, equality, active, noble, valid, rational, contented, legal, animate, attentive

36. Fill up the blanks by inserting a single word in each gap —

(1) Labour is indispensable—success—examinations

(2) He alone has faithfully—his promise, the others have treacherously—theirs

(3) They were profuse—their promises, but not so—their money

(4) Truth may fail—first, but it is sure to prevail—last, and triumph—falsehood—the end

(5) He was proud when I—, he was—when I reproved him

(6) John, as well as James,—to be rewarded for diligence

(7) Jadu and Gopal—reason to feel ashamed of—conduct

Hints —(3) In, of, (5) praised, submissive

37 Give examples of —

(a) Masculines used as nouns of common gender

(b) Feminines used as nouns of common gender

(c) Feminines that have no corresponding masculine forms

38 Give instances of *common* nouns becoming *proper*, and of *proper* nouns becoming *common*

Hints —Mason, Baker, Smith, etc, were originally Common nouns, but by being frequently applied to particular persons by way of distinction, they were eventually restricted to those persons only and gradually treated as Proper nouns

39 Parse the italicised words in the following —

(a) *After* him then, and bring him back.

(b) *What* o'clock is it ?

(c) I tell you *what*

(d) *Seeing* is *believing*

(e) *Down* with the traitor !

(f) Get *you* gone

(g) He could not sleep a *wink* last *night*.

40 'Give the different meanings, with examples, of —
sound, spring, main, charge, fair, character, hard

41. Give four examples of —

(a) Intransitive verbs followed by personal pronouns in the objective case

(b) Transitive verbs having a passive signification in the active form

(c) Adjectives that are always placed immediately after the nouns qualified by them

Hints —(a) *Sit thee* down *Courage failed me* *Hic thee* home *Poverty stared him* in the face (b) The book *is printing* (c) Time *immemorial*, the Viceroy *elect*

42 Form an *adverb* from each of the following words, and construct a short sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you —Need, true, whole, single, one, utter, possible, will, intention, joke

43 Show by two examples that there are exceptions to the rules —

(a) That *one* singular subject is followed by a *singular* verb

(b) That *two* singular subjects are followed by a *plural* verb

(c) That a *plural* subject is followed by a *plural* verb

(d) That if the verb in the Principal clause be of the *past* tense, the verb in the Dependent clause should be of the *past* tense

Hints —(a) The *Jury were* divided in their opinions (b) *Rice and curry is* my favourite food (c) Thirty *rupees was* paid (d) He *explained* to them that two straight lines cannot enclose a space

44. Correct or justify —

(1) He is to blame not you

(2) Who does he speak to ?

- (3) He looked at the letter's signature
- (4) I not only purchased a horse, but also a carriage
- (5) He was a good man, but very poor
- (6) The school has broken up two weeks ago
- (7) I recovered my health by and by
- (8) This will be useful both to you and me.

Hints —(3) At the signature to the letter (5) Put *though* for *but* (8) And to me

45 Show by examples the distinction between—1 pro noun, a pro verb a pro-adjective, and a pro sentence

Hints —John is sorry, and *so* am I—Here '*so*' is a pro-adjective as it is used as a substitute for '*sorry*' Did you go there? Yes—'*Yes*' is a pro-sentence as it is used as a substitute for the sentence 'I went there'

46 In each of the following sentences insert in the blank space one word opposite in meaning to that of the word italicised —

- (1) Commerce is *flourishing*, but agriculture is——
- (2) *Modesty* is more attractive than——
- (3) Your conduct is *manly*, but his conduct is——
- (4) The waves are *advancing* and——
- (5) His appearance was——, but his manners were *attractive*
- (6) *Dismiss* this servant, but——the other
- (7) The *buyer* and the——came to an understanding
- (8) *Wholesale* trade is more lucrative than——trade
- (9) Buy in a——market and sell in a *dear* market
- (10) His second son is very *extravagant*, but his third son is very——

Hints —(1) Languishing, (2) forwardness, (6) retain

47 In the following sentences, put the direct clauses into the indirect form (The *pronouns in italics* must not be altered)

(a) I said to *him*, "When will you give me the book?"

(b) I said to *you*, "Come and sit near me"

(c) Did you say to her, "I will never speak to you again?"

(d) *He* said to *me*, "I cannot promise to give you promotion"

(e) I said to *them*, "Don't bother me"

(f) I said to *them*, "Will you go with me?"

48 Combine the following into one compound sentence —

The monsoon failed The tanks became almost empty
No grain could be sown A famine was feared. The ryots
looked anxiously for the next monsoon It proved more
abundant than usual The danger was averted.

49. For each of the italicised verbs in the following sentences use the word *looked* followed by a correct preposition (or, an adverb and preposition) —

(i) I *viewed* the scenery

(ii) I *expected* a miracle to happen

(iii) I *regarded* him as already a member of the society

(iv) I *despised* him for his untruthfulness.

(v) I *respected* him as my guide and counsellor

(vi) I *trusted* him for support

(vii) I *investigated* the matter

Hints —(ii) Looked for (iv) Looked down upon (v) Looked up to (vi) Looked to

50 Construct short sentences introducing the following dependent clauses —

(i) I am quite well, but was ill

(ii) What he was saying

51 Give the meaning of the words in italics in —

(i) But what *fell* next? (ii) I was dismissed as evening
fell (iii) *Fell* as he was in act and mind (iv) They fly
over flood and *fell*

Hints —(i) Happened (ii) Approached (iii) Cruel (iv)
A barren hill

52 Recast the following sentences as directed —

(i) There are few young men who would not overcome this difficulty (Omit the negative)

(ii) The hubbub among the servants increased 'as this crisis approached (Make the sentence a simple one)

(iii) Is there anything that can be done to express my gratitude? (Use the word *means*)

(iv) A thief stole my purse in the bazar yesterday (Use the verb *rob*)

53 Construct sentences in which the following words are used, one each as a *noun*, one each as an *adjective* and once each as a *verb* —Stone, black, fell, rival, sun, book, divine, brain, time, stock, school

Hints —Stone house, in black and white, rival schools, sun hat, to brain one with a stick

54 Correct or justify —

(a) I as well as he am ready

(b) It's me

(c) All went but him

(d) All went but he

(e) That's him

(f) Every one must judge of their own feelings

Hints —(b) Grammatically the sentence should be—'It's I'; for, the verb *to be* has the same case after it as before it. But as the sentence is often used colloquially it may be regarded as correct

55 Turn into the Indirect form of narration —

Meeting John yesterday, I said to him, "Have you prepared the special lesson which your teacher prescribed last week?" He replied, "You must remember that I was

absent from the class last week" "In that case," said I, "you should have asked your class-fellows on your return to school, what lessons had been appointed" I added, "You should learn not only to do what you are ordered to do, but to think about your duty for yourself and to take pleasure in doing it"

56 Point out and correct any errors of expression —

- (i) He disliked books and all those sorts of things
- (ii) This happened in William's and Mary's reign
- (iii) Nobody in their senses could do such a thing
- (iv) He was of as great use and even greater than his father
- (v) He was kind, but lacked either prudence or cleverness
- (vi) Some one or other, I don't know whom, struck the blow

57 Form —(a) Adjectives from—*gift, wheat, eagle, toil, two, infant, disaster, master, seven, ceremony, crystal, male*

(b) Adverbs from—*dark, head, other, gay, back, good, south, three, holy, piece, cross, length*

Construct a sentence to illustrate the meaning of each of the words formed by you

Hints —(a) Wheaten, two-fold, (b) Headlong, otherwise, southernly, piecemeal

58 Form *diminutives* from—

Peter, steer, Henry, scythe, sucker, hump, world, cage, bill William, spade, statue

Hints —Peterkin, stirk, Hal or Harry, sickle, suckling, worldling, cageling, billet, Willy, statuette

59 Insert *prepositions* in the following blanks —

A tortoise dissatisfied—his lowly life, when he beheld so many—the birds, his neighbours, disporting themselves—the clouds and thinking that if he could but once get—the air, he

could soar—the best of them, called one day—the eagle, and offered him all the treasures—the ocean, if he could only teach him—fly

60 Turn each of the following *complex* sentences into a *simple* one —

(i) He would go if you asked him

(ii) It is doubtful whether he will succeed

(iii) I can make it clear to you that I am innocent.

(iv) If I could sell my milk at a good price, I might buy a hen

Hints —(i) He would go on your asking him (iv) I might buy a hen on the sale of my milk at a good price

61 Construct *compound* sentences in which each of the following forms one of the co-ordinate sentences —

(i) Or he will send a substitute

(ii) Else you will be ruined

(iii) Nor was his name obscure.

(iv) If you are able to walk so far.

62 Turn the following passage into the Direct form of speech —

The young man said that I had guessed wrongly, that he had nothing of the kind in his thoughts He hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I came to England, that he would give me some letters to his friends in London to let them know how good I had been to him and in what part of the world and under what circumstances I had left him

63. Reconstruct the following sentences as directed —

(a) Better dwell in the midst of alarm than reign in this horrible place (Make *dwelling* the subject of the sentence and use *preferable*)

(a) It was not till the Prussians came up towards the close of that memorable day, that Wellington was able to reap the

- (6) *Incapable of being explained*
- (7) *A style containing more words than are necessary*
- (8) *He is unable to pay his debts*
- (9) *The original pattern or model of a work.*
- (10) *A remedy for all diseases*
- (11) *Happening at the same time*
- (12) *A remedy to counteract the effects of poison*
- (13) *His manners were more like those of a woman than of a man*

Hints —(2) Inexorable , (3) untamable , (4) impracticable
(5) unsalable , (6) inexplicable , (9) samples , (10) panacea

67 For each of the italicised verbs in the following use the right part of the verb *take* followed by a correct preposition (or adverb and preposition) —(a) He *deceived* many (b) This *lessened* the success of the scheme (c) We should not *adopt* unfair means (d) He *adopted* the cause of the oppressed (e) I *liked* him at once (f) The boy *resembles* his father (g) The Inspector *recorded* his statement (h) I *thought* him a fool. (i) He is quite *absorbed* in his new pursuit

Hints —(a) Many were *taken in* by him , (b) took away from , (c) take to , (e) took to , (z) take up with

98 Recast the following sentences making only necessary changes and using the proper part of the verb indicated —

- (1) I will give you a watch (Use the verb *present*)
- (2) When do you begin your studies ? (Use *enter*)
- (3) His property was taken from him (Use *deprive*)
- (4) I have been acquainted with him for a long time (Use *acquaintance* and *ago*)
- (5) He was too nervous to recollect his arguments (Omit *too* and use *forget*)
- (6) He was too sensible not to perceive his blunder (Omit *too* and use *aware*)

Hints —(2) Enter into (4) I made his acquaintance long ago (5) He was so nervous that he could not but forget his arguments. (6) He was sensible enough to be aware of his blunder,

69 Form *two abstract nouns* from each of the following words, and by means of illustrative sentences, show how these nouns differ in *meaning* or in *usage* —

(i) Accept, (ii) observe, (iii) receive, (iv) succeed

Hints —(i) I could not but thank him for his kind *acceptance* of my offer I offered him money, but he showed no signs of *acceptancy* (ii) Observation and observance (iii) Receipt and reception (iv) Success and succession

70 Express in the Direct form of question and answer —

I asked him how he dared disobey my orders and whether he did not deserve to be punished He said he was sorry he had offended me and hoped I would forgive him

71 Expand the *phrase*, common to each of the following sentences, into a *clause* —

(a) *Deprived of her naval power*, England was yet able to maintain the war

(b) *Deprived of her naval power*, England was not able to maintain the war

(c) *Deprived of her naval power*, England will not be able to maintain the war

72 Write the following in the form of indirect narration —

Gopal —How do you think you have done in the examination?

Krishna —That is a question which I cannot answer here and now Wait till we get home and I have had time to look at my books to night

Gopal —But surely you must have some general idea of how you have done

Krishna —I prefer not to say anything "Speech," they say, "is silver, but silence is gold "

Gopal —Well, please yourself then

Hints —Gopal asked Krishna what he thought as to how he had done in the examination Krishna replied that that . that night Gopal added that he had surely some . done Krishna preferred not to say anything, for, they say speech is silver, but silence is gold' Gopal said that he might then please himself

78 Are the cardinal numerals *below* one hundred ever used in the plural forms? Give examples Examine whether the singular is correct in the following —(i) I'll take the ghost's word for a thousand *pound* , (2) This ten *year* have I served him well

Hints —By twos, by threes, on all fours, at sixes and sevens

74 Compare the meaning of *who* in the following sentences —

(i) I met a friend *who* told me the news (ii) Why should we consult this man *who* knows nothing of the matter? (iii) This is the man *who* spoke to us yesterday.

Hints —(i) Who=and he , here *who* connects two co ordinate clauses (ii) Who=since he , here *who* is used to imply a *cause* (iii) Here *who* defines and explains the antecedent *man*

75 Parse the words in italics in the following —

- (1) He is far from *wishing* you harm
- (2) *Wishing* to avoid him I hurried away
- (3) He studied *hard*
- (4) He often goes *fishing*
- (5) He will come here *three days* hence
- (6) It will be *all one* a thousand years hence
- (7) *A thousand* men came
- (8) Your answer is not *worth* much

(9) This is the *very* place for me

(10) *After* what you have said, I consent

76 Report the following speech in the Direct form —

The Magistrate asked the complainants if they did not come from a distance, and what they were doing so far from home. Surely it would have been better for them to have laid that complaint of theirs at the thana instead of coming to him when they saw he was so busy.

77 Form six short sentences using the words—*prize*, *crop*, *mean*, once each as a *verb* and once each as a *noun*.

78 Complete the following sentences by inserting one word in each of the blank spaces —

(1) Do not pry—other men's secrets

(2)—I answer the letter, or—you like to do so yourself?

(3) I have been ill—two days, but I hope to be better—to-morrow, and quite well—a week's time

(4) This road is preferable—that one, but I feel—tired to walk any farther

(5) Which of these two hats—yours? Neither is—, but both—yours

(6) A wise man provides himself—a famine, and himself—a revolver

(7) The lady puts—airs and herself—silk

(8) He struck his name—the roll and himself—the back

(9) I—be much obliged if you—kindly let me know how the letter—be addressed

(10) If you—do this, you—certainly—lost your life

Hints —(1) Into, (2) or do-you like, (3) by to-morrow, in a week's time; (7) on, in, (8) on the back, (9) should be addressed

79 State clearly the sense of the following idiomatic expressions —

- (a) He was as good as his word
- (b) Put it in black and white
- (c) Their name is 'Legion'
- (d) It goes against the grain
- (e) He threw cold water on the proposal
- (f) He wished to retire from the world

Hints —(a) He was faithful (b) Write it down (c) They are innumerable (d) It goes against his nature (e) He discouraged the proposal (f) He wished to abandon active life

80 Express the meaning of (a) in a *compound* sentence, of (b) in a *complex* sentence, and of (c) and (d) in *simple* sentences —

- (a) All but John had lost their money
- (b) All but for John had lost their money
- (c) He disliked the fruit as it was sweet
- (d) He disliked the fruit sweet as it was

81. Express the following in the indirect form, taking care to use appropriate reporting verbs —

- (1) He said to me, "Be sure, I will not deceive you"
- (2) The teacher said, "See, this is where your mistake lies"
- (3) "Off with you," said the man, "this is no place for you"
- (4) "Hurrah ! hurrah !" cried the boy, "I stand first on the list"

Hints —(2) The teacher pointing out his mistake asked him to mark where it lay (3) The man told him in anger to be off as that was no place for him

82 Combine into one *simple* sentence —

I purchased a horse I purchased it from a horse dealer
I had examined the horse It was of brown colour Its age was five years. It cost 500 rupees

83. Express the following in two ways, using (a) the *noun* form and (b) the *adjective* form of *presumes* —

He presumes to question my authority

Hints —(a) It is *presumption* on his part (b) He is *presumptuous* enough...

84. Distinguish between —

(1) Do that and I shall be angry.

Do that or I shall be angry

(2) Open at page 10

Turn to page 10

(3) They prepared a grand feast

They prepared for a grand feast

(4) I forgot to do the sum

I forgot how to do the sum

(5) I have read the first two chapters

I have read the two first chapters

(6) He asked me how I did

He asked me how I did it

(7) You will get little credit for this

You will get a little credit for this

(8) He hit the ball

He hit at the ball

85. Correct the following —

(1) I am comparatively better to-day.

(2) Our examination will commence from the 15th December

(3) What for did you go there?

(4) We availed of the holidays to go home.

(5) I am thick and thin with him

(6) He has taken admission in the Hare School

(7) There are many ripe fruits in the tree

(8) He has done a mistake

(9) The second and third class have not been examined.

(10) Open the 7th page

(11) You mistook

(12) I have purchased two pairs of shoes

(13) I cannot call into mind his name

(14) The appointment is in the disposal of the superintendent

(15) Let me know how are you?

86 Add a sentence to each of the following so as to show that you clearly understand when each should be used —

(a) I did come.

(b) I ought to come

(c) I ought to have come

(d) I will come

Hints —(c) I ought to have come when he was in distress

87- Turn into the indirect form of narration —

"O Romeo, Romeo!" said Juliet, "wherefore art thou Romeo? Deny thy father, and refuse thy name for my sake, or if thou wilt not, be but my sworn love, and I no longer will be a Capulet"

Hints —Addressing Romeo by name with a great deal of impatience, Juliet asked him wherefore he was Romeo. She then entreated him to deny his father and refuse his name for her sake, or if he would not, to be but her sworn love, and she would no longer be a Capulet

88- For the italicised words in the following substitute simple English verbs, with an adverb or preposition —

(1) They *postponed* the payment of the bill for a fortnight

(2) I have not yet *examined* the papers

(3) The robbers *attacked* the traveller

(4) I cannot *tolerate* his impertinence

(5) I have no friend to *support* me

(6) The boy must be *dismissed* from the school

(7) Please *dismiss* these men

(8) She is not in the habit of *revealing* her secrets

(9) The two friends *quarrelled*

(10) They *departed* at 5 P M

(11) I cannot *discover* the sense of these lines

Hints —(4) Bear with , (5) stand by , (7) send away ,
(9) fell out

89 Express *negatively*, making no change in the meaning —

(a) He was too late to catch the train

(b) Everything he touched he adorned

(c) She is more intelligent than her brother

(d) But for your interference, there would have been blood-shed

(e) Everything will perish

90 Express in four different ways the meaning of the following sentence, using the proper form of each of the expressions—*oblige, bind, devolve, be incumbent*

"It is our duty to worship God "

Hints —It devolves on us to worship God It is incumbent on us to worship God

91 Combine the following into one sentence without using the conjunction *and* —

'I was thus musing, I cast my eyes towards the summit of a rock, the rock was not far from me, I discovered a person on the rock, he was in the habit of a shepherd, he was in reality a being of superior nature

92 How do the following sentences differ in meaning ? Use the noun form of *possess* when bringing out the difference

(i) He possessed the key of the fortress

(ii) He possessed himself of the key of the fortress

Hints —(i) He was in possession of the key (ii) He took possession of the key

93 Recast the following sentences as directed —

(i) He was so reluctant to consent to her departure that he kept the passport locked away (Use for *reluctant* its noun form)

(2) His conduct *does him no credit* (Use the verb *is* followed by an *adjective* for the words italicised)

(3) This *cannot be destroyed* (Use the verb *is* followed by an *adjective* for the words italicised)

(4) As soon as he saw me, he ran away (Use the comparative of *soon*)

(5) It is better to live in the country than to live in the town. (Use *preferable* in place of *better*)

(6) I last saw him a month ago (Change *a month ago* into *for a month*)

(7) He could not secure the post on account of idleness (Introduce the adverb *too*)

(8) I stopped to speak to him and then walked on (Use the noun *walk*)

(9) Jadu seemed better than any of his companions. (Use the positive degree of *better*)

(10) Mount Everest is the highest mountain in India (Use the comparative degree of *highest*)

94 Correct or justify —

(a) Thinking of them, my pen tarries as I write

(b) I intended to have written to him

(c) I heard of him running away

(d) Homer was not only the maker of a nation, but of a language

(e) He is better versed in theology than any living man

(f) What is the sense of you making such a remark ?

(g) I never remember having met his equal

(h) His failure was rather due to his stupidity than from the neglect of his teacher

(i) He could name politicians whom he knew were above such considerations

(j) There are no less than seven persons in the room

(k) Nothing but wailings was heard

(l) Neither of them are remarkable for precision.

95 What prepositions should be used after—*grapple, dominion, entail, instil, tide, speculate, defer, impertinent, precluded, pry, repentant, plot, consistent, proof, dwell* ? Add illustrative sentences

96 Turn the following into the Direct narration —

I told him I should not go out of his house until he had done justice to myself and my sister. To which he replied that as to that I might please myself, that I was welcome to remain in that house as long as I liked, and he hoped I should be comfortable while I honoured it with my presence ; but that as for himself he unfortunately had an important engagement elsewhere just then, and would therefore be unable to enjoy longer my agreeable society

Hints —I said to him, "I shall you have done justice to myself sister." "As to this," he replied, "you may please yourself, you are welcome like, and I hope you will be comfortable presence , but as for myself just now and shall society "

97 Insert the proper word in each of the blanks —

A man was angling—the river—day, and—a small fish As he was taking it—the hook and going to put it—his basket, the fish opened—mouth and began to implore his—, begging that he would throw it—the river— "And why—I have pity—you, and throw you—the river ?" asked the man "Why,"—the fish, "because at present I am—young and little, and not so well—your while—I shall be, if you take me some time—, when I am—larger ",

98 Correct the following —

(1) You mistake to think that he is poor

(2) He is cleverer between the two

- (3) I think you shall be at house when I will call at you
- (4) So much milk will not contain in the bottle
- (5) Gopal as well as his friends are poor
- (6) I was very surprised that he did not know where

is China

- (7) He caught hold upon me at the right arm
- (8) There is no use of buying this umbrella
- (9) I must take your leave now
- (10) This is a verbal translation of his letter.
- (11) He has no other desire but to make a name
- (12) Neither the parents nor the son was present in the church.

99 Compose sentences to illustrate the correct use of the following idiomatic phrases —

To be in the dark , to take to task , to play fast and loose , on pain of death , for all the world , to stand over , to plume oneself upon , by storm to play ducks and drakes , stuff and nonsense

Hints —I was quite *in the dark* (knew nothing) about their marriage The teacher *took me to task* (reproved) as I remained absent from the class We should not *play fast and loose* (say one thing and do another) with any man The traitor entered the palace at night *on pain of death* I will not part with this ring *for all the world* The youth *played ducks and drakes* (squandered foolishly) with his fortune What he says is all *stuff and nonsense* (*rubbish*)

100 Insert an appropriate word in each of the following blanks —

- (1) Remain—thou art—I return
- (2) It is better to be blind—an eye than to be blind—one's faults
- (3) He called—us— a few weeks
- (4) The steamer plies—Goalund and Chandpur

- (5) We sent—Bombay—a great doctor
- (6) You are—tall—your age
- (7) The cat has—the milk.
- (8) The vessel struck—a sunken rock
- (9) Every—should be conscious of—faults
- (10) His conduct was subversive—all discipline

101 Insert an appropriate preposition after each of the following, and construct a short sentence to illustrate its meaning —

In keeping—, with reference—, with an eye—, at variance—, in respect—, with respect—, make the best—, make the most—, in virtue—, lay stress—, in preposition— make an end—, in unison—, take advantage—, gain advantage—,

Hints —Whatever we do, we should do *with an eye to* the future Our acts should not be *at variance with* our words They are trying to *make the best of* a bad bargain We *made the most of* our spare time He succeeded simply *in virtue of* a good memory The speaker *laid stress on* the words 'tax' and 'revenue' Thus he *made an end to* his enquiry For 'in keeping' etc see chapter xvi (idioms and phrases) and chapter xxi

102 Explain the force of *a* in the following —

- (i) Not *a* boy among you can answer this
- (ii) The cloth is selling at *a* rupee *a* yard
- (iii) They went *a* hunting
- (iv) He has *a* chance of passing the examination
- (v) There lived *a* rich man at Howrah
- (vi) Two of *a* trade can never agree

103 Construct sentences containing —

- (i) *Will* used in a simple future tense
- (ii) *That* as a conjunction to denote consequence

(iii) *Need* as a verb in the indicative mood, present imperfect momentary tense, third person, singular number

(iv) *The* as an adverb

(v) An *adverb* used as an *adjective*.

(vi) A *noun* in the *second person*

Hints —(ii) Such was his diligence *that* he topped the list of successful candidates (v) The *then* king (vi) You, *boys* listen to me

104 Insert a suitable phrase in each of the places left blank —

(1) A master should never impose too much work——

(2) No rational being is indifferent——

(3) Why do you prohibit him —— ?

(4) The book was replete——

(5) He is an adept——

(6) I was successful——

(7) I will acquiesce——

(8) You should be careful to guard ——

(9) Your parents will rejoice——

(10) We meditated upon——

(11) He repented——

(12) This is an excuse——

Hints —(2) to right or wrong, (4) with errors, (6) in gaining the prize, (7) in your proposal, (8) against danger, (9) at your success, (10) the shortness of life, (11) of disobeying his father.

105 Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning or usage between the following pairs of words —

Noxious and obnoxious, defer and differ, truth and truthfulness, well off and well up, pallet and palate, righteous and rightful, in demand and on demand, worth and worthy, infirm and unfirm, exult and exalt

Hints —*Noxious* plants should be rooted out An *obnoxious*

smell is coming out from the swamp. Do not *defer* till to-morrow what you can do to-day. He is *well up* in mathematics. Spread a cover-let over the *pallet*. He has been suffering from a sore in the *palate*. I am the *rightful* owner of the garden. The book is not *in demand*. *On demand* I promise to pay you the sum

106 Change the following into the indirect form of speech —

“Have you finished your lesson, George?” said Mr Prentice to his son. “No father,” replied George hanging down his head. “Why not my son?” “Because it is so difficult, father, I am sure I shall never learn it. Besides, I could not remember it after I had learnt it, my memory is so bad.” “If I were to promise you a holiday on the third of next month, do you think you should forget the date?” “No, I am pretty sure that I should not.”

107 Explain the force of the word *do* in the following sentences —

- (a) *Do* you read this book?
- (b) He could not *do* the work
- (c) He does not respect you more than I *do*?
- (d) How do you *do*?
- (e) This pen will *do*

108 Parse the italicised words in the following—

- (i) One more *effort* and you will succeed
- (ii) God is *all* love
- (iii) This is *just* what I want
- (iv) I will read the book *only* this *once*
- (v) The river ran *purple* to the sea
- (vi) He died a *martyr*
- (vii) *Suffice* it to say
- (viii) I will see you *to day week*
- (ix) He is worth *you* and your *brother* put together

(x) She looked *daggers* at him

(xi) My *son* to desert me !

109 Re-write the following sentences according to the directions given —

(1) I could not but shed tears for what he had done
(Replace *but* by *help*)

(2) Sanskrit is not-easier than English (Make the sentence an interrogative one)

(3) I wish I had a lodge in some wilderness (Make the sentence exclamatory)

(4) He was so wicked that even his parents failed to dissuade him from doing wrong to others (Substitute *too* for *so* and make the sentence simple)

(5) I would rather know a few things well than many things badly, (Use *to* for *than* and the noun form of *know*)

(6) I shall have to finish this (Change the voice)

(7) Our *desire* for wealth increases with our *luxury* (Give adjectives for the words in italics, and use *the—the*)

110 Change the form of narration in the following —

“Will you help me against a wild boar that has insulted me?” asked a horse of a man “I will gladly do so,” replied the man, “but I shall afterwards require your services, and you will have to go home with me” “I thank you,” said the horse, “but I see that revenge may cost more than it is worth, and I will not, therefore, accept of your kindness”

111 Fill up the blanks —

(a) If you do not—to my request, I must insist—the payment of the amount—the—farthing I—not connive—any of the improprieties—conduct—which you are—now and then guilty

(b) Their letters came—our possession We could see—

the whole plot The decorations are not—my taste—augh
I know, she is an honest woman

(c) He has many demands—his purse You are—far—
the mark He is—the good graces—the manager He is
mad—anything I know

(d) It is only—firmness—ourselves that we can encourage
those who are—us Greatly—our surprise they failed—their
attempts

112 Rewrite the following sentences so as to make the
words in italics emphatic —

(a) This garden is *mine*.

(b) *John* broke my slate

(c) John *broke* my slate

(d) *Nobody* goes there

113 Exemplify the use of —

(i) An adverb qualifying a conjunction

(ii) An adverb qualifying a preposition

(iii) A gerundial infinitive qualifying an adjective

(iv) A gerundial infinitive qualifying a noun

(v) A relative pronoun introducing an adverbial clause

Hints —We admire this gentleman *who* (=since he) dis-
charges his duties faithfully

114 Change the form of narration in the following —

“What does the pretty or the value of the ring signify?”
said Nerissa “You swore to me, when I gave it to you, that
you would keep it until the hour of death, and now you say
you gave it to the lawyer’s clerk, I know you gave it to a
woman”

115. Re-write the following sentences correctly —

(1) This book is superior and better than that

(2) All have been invited and received attention.

(3) It is a book whose every chapter is useful

- (4) This medal is hard to be won
 (5) The matter was not informed to his father
 (6) We have not seen them play or sing.
 (7) 'Children' are in the plural, because they mean more

than one

- (8) I do not wish to get myself married
 (9) This is more preferable than that
 (10) He prefers to read than to write

Hints —(2) and have received , (4) hard to win , (6) or heard them sing , (8) to get married

116 Distinguish between —

- (1) He has much work to do
 He has to do much work
 (2) I will see you home
 I will see you at home
 (3) The porter showed me the room
 The porter showed me into the room
 (4) There is a man of war
 There is a man-of war
 (5) The prisoner robbed the child.
 The prisoner stole the child
 (6) He tried not to appear at the examination
 He did not try to appeal at the examination
 (7) He wrote a poem the other day
 He wrote out a poem the other day
 (8) He went off in a passion
 He went off into a passion

Hints —(1) He has much work in hand He is obliged to do much work (2) I will go with you as far as your home I will call on you at your home (7) He composed a poem He transcribed a poem (8) He went away in an angry mood He became very angry

117 Rewrite the following sentences according to the directions given —

(i) This house is twice as large as the other (Substitute some other adverb for *twice*.)

(ii) Only a book has been stolen (Rewrite without *only*.)

(iii) The elephant is not the largest of animals. (Use the comparative of largest)

(iv) There is no danger of his poisoning you (Express in the passive voice)

(v) His expenditure was in proportion to his earnings (Make the sentence a complex one and use *the—the*)

(vi) I thought that he was a hermit. (Make the sentence a simple one)

(vii) I wish I were able to do this (Use the verb *like* instead of *wish*)

(viii) You must labour hard, or you will not pass the examination (Make the sentence a simple one)

(ix) How long is it since he came of age? (Omit *it*)

(x) It is said that he died at the age of ninety five (Omit *it*)

Hints .—(i) This house is as large *again* as the other

118. Combine the following into one complex sentence —

Two persons sometimes attempt to 'decide a dispute by fighting. One may be right on the disputed question. The other may be wrong. To settle such a question by fighting is very absurd. You will think so

119 Distinguish the different meanings obtained by changing the position of the word *only* in the following —

' This boy attempted five questions *only*

120. Frame sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning or usage between the following pairs of words —

Ostensible and ostentatious aptitude and aptness,

work day and day-work , four-foot and four-footed , simulation and dissimulation ; hanging and hangings , disinterested and uninterested , hand-mill and mill-hand

121 Turn into indirect narration —

"Listen to what I am going to say," said a shop-keeper to his apprentice boy, " here is an invoice for the banker Take the invoice to him, and at the same time show him the cloth Set off now, sir, and remember the price of the cloth—six crowns a yard " "Am I to make any abatement, sir ?" asked the boy "Abatement ?" cried the shop-keeper ; " not a farthing The full price and ready money—remember "

Hints —He told him to set off at once and remember the price of the cloth which was six crowns a yard ...The shop-keeper, surprised to hear the boy talk of abatement, cried that not a farthing should be abated and asked him (the boy) to remember that he wanted the full price and ready-money

122. Substitute more suitable words for those in italics in the following .—

- (i) India is naturally *defended* by seas and mountains
- (ii) He was a *famous* burglar.
- (iii) The army is strong enough to *protect* the country
- (iv) The prisoner was *acquitted* on bail
- (v) He was set at *freedom* after fourteen years
- (vi) The man was *devoted* to gambling.
- (vii) I *refrain* from food on the eleventh day of the moon
- (viii) This is a *plain* falsehood
- (ix) He is a *fit* officer
- (x) Quinine is very *efficient* in fever
- (xi) Do not allow him to go out with his head *open*
- (x'1) I do not like *hard* meat
- (xii) I have a *strong* headache.
- (xiv) He has *torn* the rope

Hints —(viii) Downright (ix) Competent (x) Effective
(xi) Bare (xii) Tough (xiii) Bad. (xiv) Broken

123 (a) Give the plurals of —alkali, rabbi, s, z, p, l,
step mother, mother-in law, Smith brother, Mr Smith, man-
trap, specimen

(b) Give the past tense and past participle of .—dwell,
cost, swear, sweat, spread, weave, wind, seek, awake, bid.

Hints —(a) Rabbis, s's or esses, Z's or Zeds, p's or pp
(pages); l's or ll (lines); man-traps

124 Give three instances of different kinds to illustrate
the use of an adjective in the superlative degree without any
article

Hints ;—My *dearest* friends left me one after another
Josephine was *fairest* of the fair Their love is a love at
first sight

125 Give appropriate words denoting the cries of the
following animals —

Horse, jackal lamb, lark, lion, monkey, mosquito, mouse,
owl, pig, pigeon, snake, swallow, tiger

Hints —A jackal *yells* A lamb *bleats* A lark *sings* A
mosquito *hums* A mouse *squacks* An owl *hoots* or *screams*
A pig *grunts* A snake *hisses* A swallow *twitters*

126. Turn the following into prose order, changing the
form of speech into indirect narration —

William answered, "I will not marry Dora"

Then the old man said,—

'You will not, boy ! you dare to answer thus !'

But in my time a father's word was law,

And so it shall be now for me Look to it,

Consider, William, take a month to think,

And let me have an answer to my wish

Or by the Lord that made me, you shall pack,

And never more darken my doors again."

Hints —The old man, surprised at the answer of the boy who dared to say that he would not, said that a father's word...

127 Give two examples of —

- (a) Intransitive verbs used transitively
- (b) Transitive verbs used intransitively
- (c) *You* and *they* used indefinitely
- (d) Intransitive verbs used (apparently) in the passive voice

Hints —(a) He *talks* nonsense (b) They *stole* into the jungle (c) *you* (any one) cannot make a blind man see (d) She was *perished* with cold

128 Compose short sentences to exemplify the uses of —

- (a) *Now* and *only* as conjunctions
- (b) *Either* as an adverb
- (c) *A* as a preposition
- (d) *Very* as an adjective
- (e) *Once* as a noun and as a conjunction
- (f) *No* as an adverb.
- (g) *Somewhat* as a noun
- (h) *Quite* as an adjective

Hints —(a) *Now* (that) you have done your work, you may take rest for a while (b) If he does not play, I will not play *either* (c) Ghee sells at two rupees *a* (on) seer (d) This is the *very* place where we met (e) I will read the book for this *once* (one time) He will go back to France *once* (as soon as) he is set at liberty (f) I feel *no* better to-day (g) His second son is *somewhat* of a poet (h) They made quite a sensation (=a great sensation)

129 Combine the following simple sentences into one complex sentence —

Warren Hastings was sent to a village school. He was sent there as a child. He learnt his letters there. He sat on the same benches as the sons of the peasantry. He ultimately

became a ruler of India He was one of the most renowned among the rulers

130 Construct short sentences using the following words, (a) once each as a *participle*, (b) once each as an *adjective*, (c) once each as a *verbal noun*, (d) once each as a *gerund* —

Following, missing, burning, breathing, passing, living, rolling, playing

131. Account for the presence or absence of an *article* before the words italicized in the following pairs of sentences —

(1) *Man* is mortal

I saw the *man* passing that way

(2) Kalidas is compared with *Shakespeare*.

Kalidas is the *Shakespear* of India.

(3) Many are called, but *few* are chosen

A *few* are sure to be chosen

(4) I know *English*

I know the *English*

(5) *Virtue* ennobles character.

Truthfulness is a *virtue*

(6) He went into the country for *safety*

The *safety* of the country is at stake

(7) He bore *witness* to the honesty of the boy.

He is a *witness* in this case

(8) I prefer *fish* to meat

The *fish* lives in water.

132. Fill up the blanks —

(a) He has——a mistake He has——wrong He has——
a crime

(b) Only such students are to be admitted——the school
——have passed the test examination.

(c) Previously——being released, he was accused——having conspired——the king

(d) The thief broke——the wall of the house The negotiations broke ——

(e) Do not——a course which is certain to——you to danger. There is no large island——India——the island of Ceylon

(f) There is no use——acting thus Give him an opportunity——thinking——the matter.

(g) A man must do his best—he may not always succeed I differ——you——opinion The crown passed——the hands of a foreign prince

Hints —(d) Through the wall. (f) In, of, over (g) From you in opinion.

133 Change the italicised words and phrases into clauses —

(a) I come *merely* to see you.

(b) He ought to have answered *at least* one question

(c) *Only* he went there.

Hints —(a) I come to see you, and this is my sole object

134 Give appropriate words denoting the *cries* of the following animals —

Ass, bear, bee, bull, cat, cock, cow, crow, dog, dove, duck, elephant, fly, frog, goat

Hints —An ass *brays* A bear *growls* A bee *hums* A bull *bellows* A cat *mews* or *purrs* A cock *crows* A cow *lows*. A crow *caws* A dove *coos* A duck *quacks* An elephant *trumpets* A fly *buzzes* A frog *croaks* A goat *bleats*

135 Transform the following sentences from Assertive to Interrogative —

(1) This is a very interesting book

(2) Surely Tennyson was a great poet

(3) No one can cross this bridge.

(4) Fair words and promises are of no avail in the time of danger.

(5) He went to Delhi

(6) Honesty is the best policy.

Hints —(2) Was not Tennyson truly a great poet? (4) Are fair words and promises of any avail in the time of danger?

136. Transform the verbs in the following sentences from Active to Passive and *vice versa* —

(1) We went to see the hanging of the murderer

(2) It is now necessary to purchase some books

(3) What cannot be cured, must be endured

(4) Only two letters have not been replied to

(5) Who has broken the glass?

Hints :—(1) We went to see the murderer hanged (4) He has not replied to only two letters

137. Form simple sentences using the right preposition after each of the following .—

Vengeance co-equal, consistent, enlist, fertile, accrue, admonish, advised, affix, nibble, trade, privy, remiss.

Hints —They took vengeance *upon* their enemies *for* the wrong done to them He is co-equal *with* your elder brother. Our words should be consistent *with* our deeds He is not consistent *in* his statements

He admonished me *for* (or, *of*) the fault The lawyer was not timely advised *of* the matter An appendix has been affixed *to* the book. Fish nibble *at* a bait India trades *with* England *in* jute I do not like to be a privy *to* their secrets You should not be remiss *in* your duties.

138. Distinguish the different meanings obtained by emphasizing every word of the following sentence —

“Will John walk to Rouen to morrow?”

Hints .—When the emphasis is on *will*, the sentence means,

“Will John walk to Rouen to-morrow, or will he not?” When the emphasis is on *walk*, it means—“Will John go by walking or in some other way? When the emphasis is on *to*, it means—“Will John walk as far as Rouen.

139 (i) Some adjectives are used as *nouns*. (ii) Some *nouns* are used as *adjectives*. Construct four sentences to illustrate each statement

140 Construct sentences containing the following words used (i) as *transitive* verbs, (ii) as *intransitive* verbs —

Cut, blow, grow, open, run, fill, break, close, ring, hide, write, watch

Hints — This knife does not *cut* well The box *opens* when the spring is touched The pond *fills* with water. The waves *break* on the sea-shore The tiger *hid* in the jungle

141 Parse the words in italics in the following —

(a) Walk *step* by step

(b) A *thousand* men assembled there.

(c) They received every *man* a penny

(d) A horse! a horse! My *kingdom* for a horse

(e) Fight *it* out

(f) I am *friends* with him.

(g) We shall not meet again *this side* the grave

(h) I walk *half* a mile in the morning

(i) *Many* a man went

(j) He comes here *every* other day

(k) He is *stone* blind

(l) Saddle *me* the horse

Hints — (a) Step—adverbial object denoting manner (b) A thousand of men assembled there, thousand—is used as a collective noun

142 Correct the errors in the following —

(1) Each of us have separate rooms to live in

(2) There is a good news for you

(3) His friends washed in tears, stood round his bed.

(4) Do not despair to pass the examination though you had been hindered to study.

(5) There is not a so large city in whole India than Calcutta.

(6) Not only he spoke coldly but roughly even

(7) The examination will begin from Monday.

(8) He devotes much of time in reading.

(9) Do you know when will the doctor come?

(10) He attends his duties much diligently

(11) Your name precedes before mine on the list and succeeds after John's.

(12) We will be glad from hearing such good news

143 Combine the following into one complex sentence —

Those events were occurring At that time the queen died by her own hands This was commonly reported The queen had been his sole partner in his wickedness In her bosom he could sometimes seek momentary repose from those terrible dreams. Those dreams afflicted them both nightly. The queen was unable to bear the remorse of guilt and public hate

Hints —When those events were occurring, it was commonly reported that the queen died by her own hands .

144 Mention three ways in which the *verb* of a sentence may be qualified otherwise than by a simple *adverb*. Write a short sentence illustrative of each

Hints —(1) He went *to play* (gerundial infinitive) (2) He ran a *mile* (adverbial object) (3) I do not know *when* he went there (relative adverb)

145 Write (1) two sentences each containing a verb of incomplete predication completed by a *noun*, (2) two sen-

tences each containing a verb of incomplete predication completed by an *adjective*, (3) two sentences each containing a verb of incomplete predication followed by a *participle*, (4) two sentences each containing a verb of incomplete predication followed by an *infinitive*

146. Compose (a) an optative sentence, (b) an interrogative sentence containing *what* governed by a preposition, (c) an exclamatory sentence, (d) a complex sentence containing *that* used as a relative adverb

Hints —(1) Long live the king

147 Re-cast the following sentences as directed —

(i) I reached school as soon as the bell rang. (Make the sentence a negative one)

(ii) A wicked man finds faults with others. (Make the sentence emphatic)

(iii) I suffered from fever two years ago (Make the sentence a negative one)

(iv) Only the first boy remained absent from the class (Put *all* for *only*)

(v) It appears that he was rich before (Make the sentence a simple one)

(vi) It is a sad thing that he died so young. (Make the sentence simple.)

(vii) It is not possible for any one to succeed without exerting himself (Make the sentence complex)

(viii) The origin of the story was fully related (Make the sentence complex)

(ix) John is too clever not to prepare his lessons (Omit too.)

Hints —(iii) I have not suffered from fever for the last two years (vi) His death at so young an age is a sad thing (vii) If one does not exert oneself, it is not possible that one should

succeed (λ) John is so clever as to prepare his lessons, or John is so clever that he will prepare his lessons.

148 Show by illustrative sentences the difference in meaning arising from the use of two prepositions after each of the following words .

Compare, consist, enquire, part

149 Insert one of the following words in the place left blank .—

shall, will, should, would

- (a) I—not be able to recite to-morrow
- (b) If it—rain, we—have to give up the picnic
- (c) If I were to go away,—you be sorry ?
- (d) If letters come,—I forward them to you ?
- (e) We—finish this work, come what may
- (f) The doctor—be here in half an hour
- (g) This construction, I—think, is faulty
- (h) I warned you, but still you—venture
- (i) We regret that it—be so
- (j) —we see you here to-morrow ?

150 Rewrite the following passage in Direct form —

He promised solemnly to his men that he would comply with their request, provided that they would accompany him and obey his commands for three days longer, and if during that time land were not discovered, he would then abandon the enterprise and direct his course towards Spain

Hints —He said to his men, “I promise solemnly to you that I will comply .

151. Rewrite the following sentences *tersely* and *idiomatically* —

(i) When the captain was informed of the matter, he got up, went out, mounted his horse, and rode to the port.

(ii) What special business was it that required your son to go to Calcutta ?

(iii) It is desirable that one should be happy

(iv) Madhusudan was in very poor circumstances at the time of his death

(v) No other boy in the class is as good as John

Hints —(i) On receiving the information, the captain rode to the port. (ii) What took your son to Calcutta? (iv) Madhusudan died very poor

152. Compose sentences using the following adjectives *attributively* as well as *predicatively* —Ill, certain, sure, able, complete, worthy, negligent

153 Express the meaning of each of the following in five different sentences —

(a) This youth will be rewarded for his bravery

(b) Play at dice has been the ruin of many

(c) His character is good

(d) Those who violate the rules deserve severe punishment

Hints —(a) This youth is to be rewarded for his bravery
This youth is to be rewarded as he is brave This youth is to be rewarded as he acted bravely They will reward this youth for his bravery They will reward this youth in appreciation of his bravery

154 Explain and exemplify the terms (i) Impersonal verbs, (ii) Factitive verbs, (iii) Copulative verbs

Hints —See page 55 (iii) Some Intransitive verbs require some other word or words to give a complete sense Such verbs are called Intransitive verbs of incomplete predication They are also known as Copulative verbs, as—He *was* a competent officer He *appears* to be rich

155 Compose sentences to illustrate the use of—(i) a Noun phrase, (ii) an Adjective phrase, (iii) an Adverbial phrase, (iv) a Prepositional phrase, (v) a Conjunctional phrase (vi) an Interjectional phrase

156 Write short complex sentences with an adverbial clause of concession in each, and with the following in the principal clauses —

(a) I should know this (b) I should not know this (c) I should have known this (d) I should not have known this

Hints —(a) I should know this, however much he tries to conceal it. (c) I should have known this, though he had forbidden me to do so

157 Explain and exemplify the difference between.—
admit and *admit of*; *take air* and *take the air*, *search* and *search for*, *prophecy* and *prophesy*, *non-professional* and *un-professional*; *non Christian* and *un-Christian*, *everybody* and *every body*

Hints —The astrologer *prophesied* that she would be the mother of a king

158 Relate as to a friend, in the indirect form the following imaginary conversation between yourself and the Collector of a district.—

“What brings you here? Is there anything you want to say to me?”

“I have come to ask you, sir, to be so good as to confer on me the appointment which, I am told, is vacant in your office”

“You must tell me first what your qualifications are, and whether you have had any experience of office work”

“I cannot say, sir, that I have had such experience, but I have passed all the prescribed tests, and can satisfy you as to my character and attainments”

“I shall try you for a week along with another man who has also applied to me for the appointment, and I shall give it to you, or give it to him according as you shew yourself to be better than he, or he shews himself to be better than you”

159 Complete the following sentences by inserting one word in each of the blank spaces —

- (1) The boy was named—his father.
- (2) —all his learning, he had but little prudence
- (3) He was—fined and imprisoned.
- (4) I would—die—submit to such an insult
- (5) Buy—the one—the other
- (6) Jupiter is—the largest of the planets.
- (7) I was—miles from home and hungry—
- (8)—all his possessions he was discontented.
- (9) What station are you booked—?
- (10) Be silent—you may hear
- (11) Be silent,—you will not hear
- (12) He would—the offer,—for his religious scruples
- (13) It is not expected—little boys to have a thorough

knowledge—Sanskrit

- (14) What is the necessity—going there ?
- (15) There is no necessity—buying that book
- (16) I gave way—them
- (17) I made way—them.

160. Correct the following sentences .—

- (1) Plato was of the opinion that man was immortal
- (2) He observed that procrastination was the thief of time

- (3) How many hours you require for this paper ?
- (4) I said him to go home and he replied me that he will not

- (5) They have gathered many a flowers
- (6) His son is the student of Dacca College
- (7) I have not seen Punjab for great many a year
- (8) This room is too much small
- (9) My both books have been reprinted

- (10) I walked one and a quarter miles with him
- (11) He promised me to send an interesting novel
- (12) Why you are so late in coming ?
- (13) My father is sorry, and so I am
- (14) At what hour he gets up in morning ?
- (15) Please tell me where is the New Market ?
- (16) The boy is very ill to go to school
- (17) Shall I call back the teacher ?
- (18) The girl has died from cholera last night
- (19) What like is it ?
- (20) He has gone away a quarter of an hour ago
- (21) There had been no death from small-pox last week
- (22) I slept five hours when they awoke me
- (23) The boy was not aware that the earth moved round
the sun
- (24) I am verily a man who am a Jew
- (25) He said that he will accompany with us to Surat
- (26) The Superintendent does not listen our complaints
- (27) He joined the school before six months
- (28) All your hair has been numbered
- (29) He told me he should be guarantee to his friend's
honesty.
- (30) I saw there is no use of behaving so bad
- (31) He had lost his life while he was a teacher in this
institution
- (32) He is not the man to give false witness
- (33) I have not gone through the last but one chapter
of the book.
- (34) I shall go to Madras after a week.
- (35) You should always be true to your words.
- (36) These two boys resemble to each other
- (37) The boy does not know to swim

(38) Their college will not open before a week

(39) We should repent for our sins and put faith upon
God

(40) We should not be guilty for incivility

(41) I have a dislike for mathematics.

(42) Did I not warn you about this danger ?

(43) The boy took pains on his composition

(44) He seldom or ever goes out for a walk

(45) No sooner I came in I went out again

(46) They regard my advice as little in value

(47) One must keep his promise

(48) What will be ensued on this ?

(49) I was confined in bed by severe fever.

(50) He addressed his letter to Mr. Jones Esqr

(51) He enjoys at the sight of his offspring

(52) The clock has struck six hours

(53) His mother and some other gentlemen were absent
from the meeting

(54) They were both fond of one another

(55) Whom do you say that I am ?

(56) We had hoped to have been present on the
occasion

(57) He was not only celebrated for his wealth, but his
learning

(58) Every flower and every leaf proclaim the glory of
God

(59) Each boy and each girl go to school

(60) No teacher and no student were to blame.

161 Construct sentences containing examples of —

(a) Defining *the* (b) Familiar *the* (c) *The* for the possessive
pronoun. (d) Generalising *the* with adjectives. (e) Generalising
the with nouns

Hints —(a) I have lost *the* ring that he gave me (b) Shut *the* door *The* sun is setting (c) He struck the boy on *the* (=his) head. (d) *The* rich (e) *The* cow

62 Construct sentences containing examples of —

(a) Individualising *a* (b) Generalising *a* (c) *The* with proper nouns. (d) *The* with adjectives to denote an *abstract* idea

Hints —(a) *A* man came to you yesterday. He was reading *a* book (b) Man cannot run like *a* horse Give him *a* book

63 Insert the proper form of any one of the following verbs in the place left blank —

Say, speak, tell, talk, call

(1) —the truth (2) Do not —a lie (3) I have something more to —on the subject (4) He —me that his father was ill (5) He —to me that his father was ill (6) Please —us all about the war (7) Can you —how the accident took place? (8) This boy —that the earth is not round (9) Why did you —him a miser? (10) Why did you —that he was a miser? (11) Did you —to the Magistrate about the canal? (12) How can a dumb man —? (13) It is a mistake to —that all men are selfish (14) He is too weak to — (15) The boy cannot —his lesson (16) The boys were —in the class (17) He —that he would not —with you any more (18) He —all sorts of improbable stories (19) We shall —over that in the evening

64 Give an example, one in each case, of any *two* of the following — (C U. 1920.)

(a) An abstract noun used to express a concrete object (b) The nominative absolute with a present participle. (c) A collective noun with a singular verb (d) A case in apposition.

Hints —(b) Let us start, *John going* first

65 ' Insert an appropriate preposition in each of the following blanks —

- (1) I cannot call—mind his name
 - (2) It is sad—the extreme
 - (3) Her advice had no effect—him
 - (4) The boy was punished—the Head master—a fine
 - (5) The village was destroyed—fire
 - (6) The Magistrate disposed—the case summarily
 - (7) The prize is competed—by all matriculates
 - (8) His services have been dispensed—
-

